ISSN 1007-9327 (print)
ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

World Journal of *Gastroenterology*

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 881-975

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Contents

Weekly Volume 28 Number 9 March 7, 2022

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, Shozo Osera, MD, PhD, Chief Physician, Department of Gastroenterology, Saku Central Hospital Advanced Care Center, 3400-28, Nakagomi, Saku 385-0051, Nagano, Japan. shou0122@hotmail.com

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Gastroenterology* (*WJG*, *World J Gastroenterol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of gastroenterology and hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online. *WJG* mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of gastroenterology and hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including gastroenterology, hepatology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, gastrointestinal surgery, gastrointestinal oncology, and pediatric gastroenterology.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJG* is now indexed in Current Contents®/Clinical Medicine, Science Citation Index Expanded (also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports®, Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, PubMed Central, and Scopus. The 2021 edition of Journal Citation Report® cites the 2020 impact factor (IF) for *WJG* as 5.742; Journal Citation Indicator: 0.79; IF without journal self cites: 5.590; 5-year IF: 5.044; Ranking: 28 among 92 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology; and Quartile category: Q2. The *WJG*'s CiteScore for 2020 is 6.9 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2020: Gastroenterology is 19/136.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Ying-Yi Yuan*; **Production Department Director:** *Xiang Li*; **Editorial Office Director:** *Ze-Mao Gong*.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastroenterology

ISSN
ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 1, 1995

FREQUENCY
Weekly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Andrzej S Tarnawski

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
March 7, 2022

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 881-896

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.881

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

REVIEW

Innate and adaptive immune escape mechanisms of hepatitis B virus

Hua-Jun Zhao, Yi-Fei Hu, Qiu-Ju Han, Jian Zhang

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Tai DI

Received: February 4, 2021
Peer-review started: February 4, 2021
First decision: July 27, 2021
Revised: August 9, 2021
Accepted: January 29, 2022
Article in press: January 29, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Hua-Jun Zhao, Yi-Fei Hu, Qiu-Ju Han, Jian Zhang, Institute of Immunopharmaceutical Sciences, School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Shandong University, Jinan 250012, Shandong Province, China

Corresponding author: Jian Zhang, PhD, Professor, Institute of Immunopharmaceutical Sciences, School of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Shandong University, No. 44 Wenhua West Road, Jinan 250012, Shandong Province, China. zhangj65@sdu.edu.cn

Abstract

Chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is an international health problem with extremely high mortality and morbidity rates. Although current clinical chronic hepatitis B (CHB) treatment strategies can partly inhibit and eliminate HBV, viral breakthrough may result due to non-adherence to treatment, the emergence of viral resistance, and a long treatment cycle. Persistent CHB infection arises as a consequence of complex interactions between the virus and the host innate and adaptive immune systems. Therefore, understanding the immune escape mechanisms involved in persistent HBV infection is important for designing novel CHB treatment strategies to clear HBV and achieve long-lasting immune control. This review details the immunological and biological characteristics and escape mechanisms of HBV and the novel immune-based therapies that are currently used for treating HBV.

Key Words: Hepatitis B virus; Innate immunity; Adaptive immunity; Immune tolerance; Therapeutic strategy

Core Tip: Chronic hepatitis B (CHB) infection is an international health problem. Current clinical CHB treatment strategies can partly inhibit and eliminate hepatitis B virus (HBV), but cannot achieve long-lasting immune control of the virus. Persistent CHB infection arises as a consequence of the complex interactions between HBV and the host innate and adaptive immune systems. Therefore, it is important to understand the immunological mechanisms involved in CHB infection. In this review, we detail the immune biological characteristics and escape mechanisms of HBV and discuss novel immune-based therapies.

Citation: Zhao HJ, Hu YF, Han QJ, Zhang J. Innate and adaptive immune escape mechanisms of hepatitis B virus. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 881-896
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/881.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.881

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is a small hepatotropic, enveloped DNA virus. Hepatitis B is an international health problem caused by HBV infection. Currently, approximately 257 million people worldwide are chronic HBV carriers with a high risk of developing chronic liver diseases such as liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular cell carcinoma (HCC). Each year, approximately 1 million patients die of HBV-related liver diseases[1,2]. Current clinical treatment strategies for chronic hepatitis B (CHB) mainly include pegylated interferon-α (PEG-IFN-α) and nucleos(t)ide analogues (NAs). Unfortunately, current treatments have limitations and often fail to achieve long-term virologic control.

Generally, the host innate and adaptive immune systems play critical roles in eliminating HBV upon infection. However, HBV has evolved and developed efficient strategies for escaping host immune surveillance, which results in persistent infections. The majority of HBV infections occur in newborn infants with the presence of immunological defects, characterized by a lower quality and quantity of HBV-specific T cells and B cells. In addition, maternal hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) can induce the Kupffer cells (KCs) of the offspring by upregulating programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) to suppress the HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells response to support HBV persistence after birth[3]. In addition, HBV circumvents endogenous type I interferon (IFN-I) responses[4] and inhibits the function of innate and adaptive immune cells[5]. Prolonged exposure of T cells to large quantities of viral antigens, such as hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and HBeAg, induces a defective T-cell response with the loss of effector functions and increased inhibitory receptor expression, facilitating viral persistence. Moreover, HBV infection affects the expression of human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-II alleles, including HLA-DP, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DR, on antigen-presenting cells (APCs)[6], which in turn impairs antigen presentation capacity with induction of an inefficient T-cell response, leading to persistent HBV infection.

The clinical outcomes of patients with CHB are highly based on the complex interactions between HBV and the host innate and adaptive immune systems. In this review, we detail the interaction between HBV and the host immune system to understand the immunological and biological characteristics of and escape mechanisms involved in CHB infection, and present the current immune-based therapies for CHB treatment.

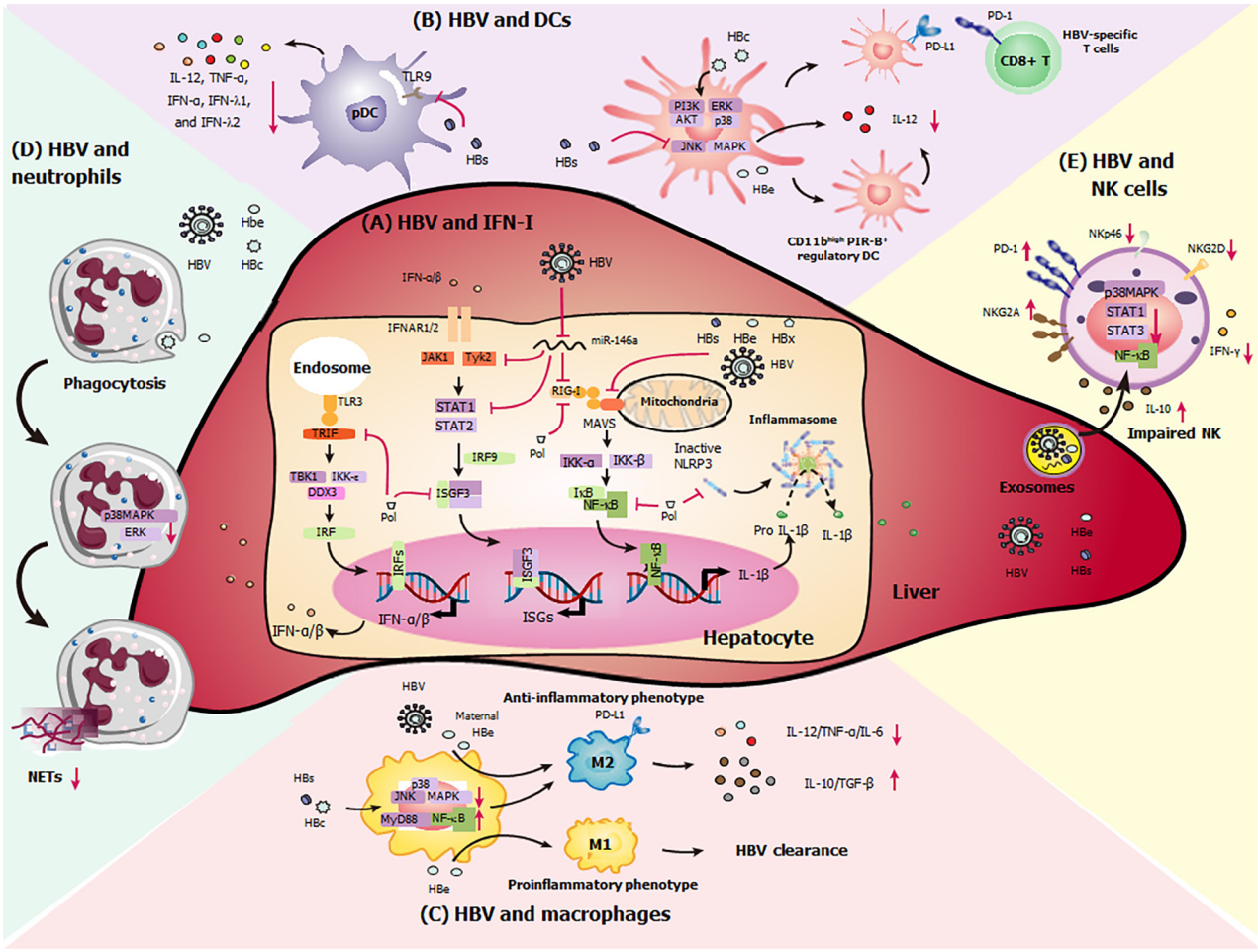
HBV ESCAPES INNATE IMMUNE SURVEILLANCE

Innate immune responses act as the first line of immune defense against viruses, bacteria, and tumors. Complement components, chemokines, and cytokines are soluble factors that form parts of the innate system. Granulocytes, dendritic cells (DCs), macrophages, mast cells, and natural killer (NK) cells are important effector cells[7,8]. Commonly, an effective innate immune response is initiated when pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP) molecules bind pattern recognition receptors (PRRs), which stimulates chemokine and proinflammatory cytokine production, and innate immune cell activation, resulting in the elimination of viruses[9]. Here, we described the interaction between HBV and innate immunity (Figure 1).

HBV infection and IFN-I

PRRs, which are widely expressed by KCs, hepatic DCs, liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs), and hepatocytes, can recognize PAMPs from HBV and induce antiviral immune responses, resulting in the secretion and IFN-I and other inflammatory cytokines. IFN-I, as a major component of the innate immune response, is critical for HBV clearance. However, HBV circumvents endogenous IFN-I responses through multiple pathways to sustain persistent HBV infection.

Chronic HBV infection downregulates the expression of Toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3), retinoic acid-inducible gene I (RIG-I), and melanoma differentiation-associated protein 5 (MDA-5) in DCs and hepatocytes, leading to the reduction of responsiveness to PAMPs and impairment of IFN-I synthesis [10]. A previous study found that HBV infection upregulates microRNA-146a (miR-146a) expression in hepatocytes, inhibiting the expression of RIG-I-like receptors and in turn suppressing IFN-I transcription[11]. Additionally, HBsAg, HBeAg, HBx, and HBV virions themselves can inhibit IFN-β synthesis by downregulating mitochondrial antiviral signaling (MAVS) and interfering with the interaction between MAVS and RIG-I[12].



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.881

Figure 1 The interaction between hepatitis B virus and innate immunity. A: Hepatitis B virus (HBV) suppression of the type I interferon (IFN-I) response. HBV infection inhibits IFN-I transcription and signal transduction and IFN-β synthesis; B: HBV affects the function of dendritic cells (DCs). HBV upregulates programmed death-ligand 1 and induces regulatory DCs that exhibit extremely low T cell-stimulatory capacity and interleukin-12 production; C: HBV affects the function of macrophages. HBV-related antigens affect macrophage polarization (M1/M2), contributing HBV clearance or HBV persistence; D: HBV affects the function of neutrophils. HBV-related antigens decrease neutrophil extracellular trap release, which facilitates HBV immune escape, replication, and persistence; E: HBV affects the function of natural killer (NK) cells. HBV-related antigens and HBV-derived exosomes dampen the Retinoic acid-inducible gene I, nuclear factor kappa B, and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling pathways, resulting in the functional suppression of NK cells during chronic hepatitis B infection. DCs: Dendritic cells; DDX3: DEAD-box RNA helicase 3; ERK: Extracellular-regulated kinase; HBc: Hepatitis B core antigen; HBe: Hepatitis B envelope antigen; HBs: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBx: HBV X protein; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; IFN-α: Interferon-α; IFN-β: Interferon-β; IFN-γ: Interferon-γ; IFN-I: Type I interferon; IFNAR: Interferon-α receptor; IKK-ε: IB kinase ε; IL-1β: Interleukin-1β; IL-6: Interleukin-6; IL-10: Interleukin-10; IL-12: Interleukin-12; IRF3: Interferon regulatory factor 3; ISGs: Interferon-stimulated genes; ISGF3: Interferon-stimulated gene factor 3; JAK: Janus kinase; JNK: c-Jun N-terminal kinase; M1: M1-like macrophages; M2: M2-like macrophages; MAPK: Mitogen-activated protein kinase; MAVS: Mitochondrial antiviral-signaling protein; miR-146a: microRNA-146a; MyD88: Myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88; NET: Neutrophil extracellular trap; NK: Natural killer; NKG2D: Natural killer group 2 member D; NKG2A: Natural killer group 2 member A; NF-B: Nuclear factor kappa B; PD-1: Programmed cell death protein 1; pDCs: Plasmacytoid DCs; PD-L1: Programmed death-ligand 1; PI3K: Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase; Pol: Hepatitis B virus polymerase; Pro-IL-1β: IL-1β precursor; RIG-I: Retinoic acid-inducible gene I; STAT1: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 1; STAT2: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 2; TBK1: TANK-binding kinase 1; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor-β; TLR2: Toll-like receptor 2; TLR3: Toll-like receptor 3; TLR9: Toll-like receptor 9; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; TRIF: Toll/IL-1 receptor domain-containing adaptor inducing IFN-β; Tyk2: Tyrosine kinase 2.

Binding of IFN-I to the IFN receptor can induce the activation of IFN-stimulated genes (ISGs), thereby directly inhibiting HBV infection. However, HBV can extensively impair IFN-I-induced signal transduction and dampen IFN-I-mediated immune responses[4]. HBx is able to reduce transcription of the IFN-α receptor (IFNAR1) and downregulate tyrosine kinase 2, which is essential for cell surface IFNAR1 expression[13]. Additionally, matrix metalloproteinase 9, which is increased in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells of patients with CHB, binds to IFNAR1 and facilitates its phosphorylation, ubiquitination, subcellular distribution, and degradation[14]. HBV can inhibit the activities of IFN-stimulated response elements with lower ISG expression by disrupting the intracellular Janus kinase–signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 (STAT1) signaling pathway. HBV-induced miR-146a downregulates cellular STAT1 levels and blocks STAT1-Tyr701 phosphorylation in hepatocytes[11]. HBV polymerase interferes with the binding of DEAD-box helicase 3 X-linked (DDX3) to the TANK-binding kinase 1/IκB kinase epsilon complex and the induction of IFN-stimulated gene

factor 3 (ISGF3) to inhibit IFN-β induction[10]. In addition, HBV polymerase suppresses interleukin 1 beta (IL-1β) production by inhibiting nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) signaling and the inflammasome-caspase-1 pathway, resulting in IFN-α resistance and persistent HBV infection[15].

Based on these findings, IFN-I is used for the treatment of CHB. IFN-α-mediated HBV suppression is correlated with the levels of apolipoprotein B mRNA editing enzyme, catalytic polypeptide-like (known as APOBEC) and the base excision repair gene Nei endonuclease VIII-like 3[16]. IFN-α can also epigenetically regulate the HBV covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) minichromosome by disrupting general control non-depressible 5-mediated histone H3 lysine 79 methylation succinylation, resulting in the clearance of HBV cccDNA[17]. Imam *et al*[18] identified sterile alpha motif domain containing 4A as an important anti-HBV ISG that binds to and triggers degradation of the unidentified Smaug-recognition region sequence in viral RNA. ISG20 can induce the degradation of HBV RNA by selectively recognizing and binding N6-methyladenosine. In addition, tripartite motif containing 5 gamma suppresses HBV replication by interacting with the HBx protein, which promotes HBx ubiquitination at residue K48 and its subsequent degradation[19]. MX dynamin like GTPase 2 reduces HBV cccDNA by indirectly impairing the conversion of relaxed circular DNA to cccDNA[20]. Interestingly, IFN-α can also induce soluble factors that compete with HBV for binding to heparin glycosaminoglycans, thereby inhibiting HBV infection[21]. In addition to its direct antiviral effects on HBV, IFN-I indirectly exerts antiviral functions by activating immune cells. IFN-I can quickly recruit and activate NK cells and DCs, promoting the initiation of adaptive immunity[5,22], which in turn contributes to the elimination of HBV.

HBV infection and DCs

As professional APCs, DCs serve as a bridge between the innate and adaptive immune responses[23]. Recent data have shown that functional impairment of DCs by HBV infection fails to induce efficient anti-HBV immunity, leading to CHB infection and the progression of liver disease[24]. Previous data have demonstrated that patients with CHB have significantly fewer peripheral blood DCs than control subjects, accompanied by a functional decline and directly causing HBV-specific T cell dysfunction[24]. Compared to those of healthy donors, myeloid DCs (mDCs) isolated from patients with CHB display limited antigen-presenting capacity and migration capacity, features that are accompanied by the decreased expression of interleukin 6 cytokine family signal transducer (also known as gp130)[24]. Persistent HBV infection downregulates cluster of differentiation 80 (CD80), CD83, CD86, and CD40 expression in DCs, which suppresses the transduction of costimulatory signals to T cells. In addition, HBsAg reduces IL-12 production by mDCs by disrupting the c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK)–mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, resulting in a markedly tolerogenic phenotype[25]. HBcAg upregulates programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) by activating the phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)–AKT, extracellular-regulated kinase (ERK), and p38 signal transduction pathways, which suppresses HBV-specific T cell immune function[26]. HBeAg induces the conversion of bone marrow-derived DCs into $CD11b^{hi}$PIR-B^{+} regulatory DCs, which exhibit extremely low T-cell stimulatory capacity and IL-12 production[27]. Furthermore, HBV particles, especially HBsAg, downregulate TLR expression and abrogate TLR9-triggered maturation of plasmacytoid DCs, resulting in the significantly decreased secretion of certain cytokines such as IL-12, tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α), IFN-α, IFN-λ1, and IFN-λ2[28-30]. In addition, chronic HBV infection impairs IFN-α secretion and pDC maturation in response to TLR7 ligands[28].

HBV infection and macrophages

Macrophages are important innate immune cells that fight against pathogen infection and can interact with lymphocytes by activating and inhibitory surface molecules. HBV can affect the functions of monocytes and macrophages, thereby contributing to persistent HBV infection. HBV infection promotes the activation of anti-inflammatory macrophages with increased IL-10 production, which support the functional inactivation of $CD8^{+}$ T cells.

KCs, which are localized in liver sinusoids, are the largest population of innate immune cells in the liver[31]. They are stationary and able to effectively phagocytose cellular debris, foreign material, or pathogens, acting as critical sentinels for liver homeostasis[32]. Chronic HBV infection induces the production of immunomodulatory mediators such as IL-10 and transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β), and the expression of PD-L1 and PD-L2 by KCs, suppressing anti-HBV T cell responses. Furthermore, upon HBV infection, elderly mice have a significantly higher number of TNF-α-producing $Ly6C^{+}$ monocytes and a much lower number of IL-10-secreting KCs than younger mice, facilitating HBV clearance[33]. However, KCs can play different roles in the presence of different HBV antigens[34]. Boltjes *et al*[35] found that KCs could interact with HBsAg, which induced secretion of the proinflammatory cytokines IL-6 and TNF that was substantially increased compared with that seen in healthy controls. *In vivo* experiments have demonstrated that HBcAg interacts with KCs upon TLR2 activation, mediating humoral and cellular tolerance *via* IL-10 production during CHB infection, and TLR2 knockout or KC depletion leads to an accelerated HBV clearance and improved HBV-specific $CD8^{+}$ T cell responses[36]. HBeAg suppresses lipopolysaccharide-induced NOD-, LRR- and pyrin domain-containing protein 3 activation and IL-1β maturation in KCs by inhibiting NF-κB phosphorylation and reactive oxygen species production[37]. Nonetheless, HBeAg can play two distinct roles in macrophage

function. Upon HBV infection, maternal HBeAg enhances PD-L1 expression in KCs with an M2-like anti-inflammatory phenotype, which suppresses the HBV-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) response and leads to HBV persistence; however, in control mice born to HBeAg-negative mothers, HBeAg promotes the M1 proinflammatory phenotype, contributing to HBV clearance[3].

Except for KCs, monocyte-derived macrophages are critical for regulating the anti-HBV immune response and disease pathogenesis during HBV infection. Intrahepatic macrophages that had phagocytosed HBcAg show anti-inflammatory over proinflammatory functions and favor the maintenance of infection. In addition, HBsAg inhibits TLR2-induced phosphorylation of p38 MAPK and JNK MAPK with reduced production of IL-6, TNF-α, and IL-12 in human monocytes[38]. Previous findings have also shown that HBsAg can interact with monocytes and induce the MyD88–NF-κB-signaling pathway with high expression of the inhibitory molecules PD-L1, IL-10, and TGF-β, thereby initiating an immunosuppressive cascade[39]. In contrast to HBeAg and HBsAg, HBcAg from HBV-infected hepatocytes upregulates IL-23 secretion in monocyte-derived macrophages and enhances macrophage-mediated angiogenesis[40]. In addition, HBV-induced M2-like macrophages promote the immunosuppressive activity of regulatory T (Treg) cells by enhancing cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4), inducible T cell costimulator, and CD39 expression levels in an amphiregulin-dependent manner[41], impairing T helper type 1 cell immune responses and accelerating liver fibrosis and pathology.

HBV infection and neutrophils

Neutrophils exhibit protective functions against microbial infections *via* phagocytosis, degranulation, and the formation of neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs). Recent results have shown that HBV might suppress the neutrophil response. For example, neutrophils from patients with liver cirrhosis show a decreased capability for NET release, accompanied by the reduced expression of CD69 and CD80[42]. Additionally, HBV-related antigens, such as HBeAg and HBcAg, decrease NET release by decreasing p38 MAPK and ERK phosphorylation and autophagy, which facilitates HBV immune escape, replication, and persistence[43].

HBV infection and NK cells

As the main effector cells of the innate immune system, NK cells constitute up to 40%–50% of human liver lymphocytes, and serve as the first line of defense against pathogens. Activated cytolytic $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells expressing NKp46, NKp30, and perforin are associated with efficient HBV containment[44,45]. Additionally, antibody-mediated activation of NK cells plays a vital role in resolving HBV infection[45]. Abnormal NK cell receptor expression and hepatic NK cell dysfunction contribute to persistent CHB infection and HCC progression, which are related to the poor prognosis and survival of patients with liver cancer[46]. The levels of activating receptors (*e.g.*, NKp30, NKp46, and natural killer group 2 member D [NKG2D]) and cytokines (*e.g.*, IFN-γ and TNF-α) are significantly decreased in patients with CHB, which is accompanied by the higher secretion of inhibitory NK cell receptors such as T cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain-containing protein 3 (Tim-3), NKG2A, and IL-10[47]. In addition, the decreased expression of CD122, the common β chain of the IL-2 receptor on $CD56^{dim}$ NK cells, is associated with NK cell dysfunction during CHB infection[48].

The roles of circulating HBV-related antigens (*e.g.*, HBsAg and HBeAg) in mediating NK cell inhibition remain unclear. Recently, we found that HBsAg and HBeAg directly interact with NK cells and act as inhibitory mediators by interfering with the activation of STAT1, NF-κB, and p38 MAPK, which in turn impairs NK cell cytotoxicity and cytokine production[49]. HBsAg downregulates STAT3 expression, which is partially correlated with degranulation and cytokine production in patients with HBeAg-negative CHB[50]. Additionally, HBsAg-treated monocytes promote the conversion of NK cells into IL-10-producing regulatory NK cells *via* PD-L1 and major histocompatibility complex, class I, E signals, which contribute to persistent CHB infection[39]. Importantly, exosomes derived from patients with CHB shuttle HBV nucleic acids into NK cells and then dampen the RIG-I, NF-κB, and p38 MAPK signaling pathways, resulting in the functional suppression of NK cells during CHB infection[51]. miR-146a is significantly elevated in patients with CHB and modulate both NK and T-cell responses[52]. Interestingly, we found that miR-146a in NK cells can be induced by exogenous IL-10 and TGF-β, which in turn leads to NK cell dysfunction by directly targeting STAT1, accompanied by weakened IFN-γ and TNF-α secretion in patients with CHB[53].

HBV ESCAPES ADAPTIVE IMMUNE SURVEILLANCE

Adaptive immunity plays a critical role in HBV infection, accompanied by antigen specificity and sustained memory responses. Under the stimulation of APCs, HBV-specific $CD4^+$ T cells and $CD8^+$ T cells are activated and then secrete antiviral cytokines such as IL-12, IFN-γ, and TNF-α, and induce CTL responses to kill HBV-infected hepatocytes[54]. In addition, follicular helper T (Tfh) cells promote B cell differentiation into plasma cells, which are capable of producing HBV-specific antibodies[55]. Recent studies have demonstrated that newborn infants have immunological defects, and the inability to

induce HBV-specific T- and B-cell responses have been found in neonatal animals, which develop chronic HBV infection[3,56]. Furthermore, chronic HBV infection can suppress the adaptive immune system and dampen HBV clearance, leading to persistent HBV infection in patients with CHB.

HBV infection and HLA-II

HLA in APCs plays a critical role in initiating the host antiviral immune response against HBV infection due to its capacity to attract and bind peptides. HLA-I molecules can present HBV peptides to $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes, resulting in the direct cytolysis of HBV-infected hepatocytes. HLA-II alleles, including HLA-DP, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DR, encode MHC-II molecules that present exogenous antigens to $CD4^+$ T cells[57,58]. Different HLA-II alleles with particular amino acid polymorphisms determine which peptides can be presented to T cells. Moreover, these HLA alleles expressed on APCs contribute to presenting a broad range of peptides, thus determining the variability in the host immune response to HBV. Compared to HLA-DP and HLA-DQ, HLA-DR allele containing an extra β-chain gene whose product can pair with the DRα chain on APCs, is more important for the induction of sustained HBV-specific immune response. Upon HBV infection, single nucleotide polymorphisms of HLA-II antigens may also contribute to the induction of immune tolerance, leading to persistent HBV infection[57,59-62]. HBV infection reduces the expression of HLA-DP and HLA-DQ molecules on APCs, which in turn results in impaired antigen presentation capacity and an inefficient T-cell response[12,13]. Thus, polymorphisms of HLA-II genes during HBV infection can alter the antigen-binding properties of HLA-II and affect the HBV-specific immune response, partly promoting the persistent HBV infection.

HBV infection and $CD8^+$ T cells

HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells function as key cellular effectors against HBV infection[63]. During CHB infection, $CD8^+$ T cells encounter HBV antigens presented by intrahepatic APCs, such as DCs, KCs, or LSECs with weakened costimulatory signals, resulting in immune tolerance[64]. In addition, HBV infection can cause deficient secretion of inflammatory cytokines such as IL-12 and IFN-α/β in response to PAMP stimulation, further dampening the third signal required for $CD8^+$ T-cell activation. Additionally, sustained exposure to high doses of HBV antigens (*e.g.*, HBsAg and HBeAg) leads to exhausted T cells and impaired effector functions during CHB infection. Microarray analyses have revealed that HBV significantly upregulates the expression of the proapoptotic molecule Bcl-2-like protein 11 among HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells, suggesting a key mechanism related to the depletion of $CD8^+$ T cells during CHB infection[65]. Exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells show reduced IL-2, IFN-γ, and TNF-α secretion and lost cytotoxic and proliferative capacities[66,67]. Moreover, exhausted HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells display multiple inhibitory receptors such as PD-1, CTLA-4, CD244 (2B4), Tim-3, and lymphocyte activation gene 3[68], closely mimicking the transcriptional profiles of $CD8^+$ T cells[67,69,70].

T-bet is essential for successful $CD8^+$ T cell responses against HBV, whereas eomesodermin (EOMES) is a key driver of T cell exhaustion during chronic HBV infection[67,69,71]. Schurich *et al*[71] observed that reduced PD-1 expression on HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells is accompanied by high levels of T-bet, which can increase $CD8^+$ T cell functions[71], whereas EOMES might compensate for the lack of T-bet expression during HBV infection[67]. Data from a recent study showed that exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells express elevated levels of the transcription factors interferon regulatory factor 4, basic leucine zipper ATF-like transcription factor, and nuclear factor of activated T cells 1, which in turn promote the expression of multiple inhibitory receptors (such as PD-1) and is accompanied by impaired antiviral function and cellular metabolism. However, transcription factor T cell factor 1 (TCF1) expression is repressed in exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells, which is important considering that TCF1 is essential for memory T cell differentiation[72]. Moreover, when compared with HBV core-specific $CD8^+$ T cells, HBV polymerase-specific $CD8^+$ T cells show higher expression of CD38 and EOMES, accompanied by lower T-bet expression and a reduced expansion capacity[70]. Recently, transcriptome analysis of exhausted HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells in patients with CHB revealed a lower mitochondrial potential and substantial mitochondrial dysfunction[73,74], whereas exposure to antioxidants or IL-12 partially reinvigorated the antiviral activity of HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells[73,74].

$CD4^+$ T cells

$CD4^+$ T cells are important in regulating $CD8^+$ T cell activation, proliferation, and memory responses during HBV infection[75]. Generally, a loss help of $CD4^+$ T cells is considered the major factor involved in HBV-specific CTL cell failure[76]. Increasing attention has been given to the exhaustion of $CD4^+$ T cells during CHB infection. Previous results have demonstrated that HBV-related antigens, such as HBcAg and HBsAg, can upregulate the expression of inhibitory molecules on $CD4^+$ T cells. For example, Li *et al*[77] found that HBcAg increased PD-1 expression on $CD4^+$ T cells *via* the JNK, ERK, and PI3K/AKT signaling pathways disrupt the function of $CD4^+$ T cells. HBsAg increased the expression of human protein inhibitor of activated STAT1 expression (which is dependent on activation of the ERK and p38 MAPK signaling pathways), thereby contributing to the ineffectiveness of traditional treatments for CHB patients[78]. Data from a recent study showed that $CD4^+$ T cells in patients with CHB expressed high levels of TRAIL receptors, and these T cells could be targeted by $TRAIL^+$ NK cells, leading to a reduction in the number of $CD4^+$ T cells[79]. Additionally, the decreased secretion of

proinflammatory cytokines (such as IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-21) by HBV-specific $CD4^+$ T cells contribute to the exhaustion of $CD8^+$ T cell responses during chronic HBV infection[80]. $CD4^+$ T cells also differentiate into $CD4^+$ $CD25^+$ $Foxp3^+$ Treg cells, which secrete the suppressive cytokines IL-10 and TGF-β, resulting in a progressive loss of HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells[81]. Thus, $CD4^+$ T cells can directly influence HBV clearance by regulating $CD8^+$ T cells.

Tfh cells express C-X-C chemokine receptor type 5 (CXCR5) and can specifically recognize and bind to follicular B cells expressing CXCL13, which promote the formation of affinity-matured, long-lived plasma cells and antibody secretion[82]. A deficiency of Tfh cells can inhibit the formation of germinal centers (GCs) in the spleen[83]. Thus, Tfh cells play important roles in orchestrating the humoral immune response and HBsAg seroconversion in patients with CHB[84]. Previous results have shown that the frequency of Tfh cells correlates negatively with HBsAg levels in patients with CHB after PEG-IFN-α therapy[85]. The recovery of Tfh cell responses induces the production of anti-HBs antibodies and accelerates HBV clearance[55]. Additionally, Wang *et al*[86] found that HBV infection significantly increases the proportion of $CD4^+$ $CXCR5^+$ $CD25^+$ $Foxp3^+$ follicular regulatory T (Tfr) cells. Compared to $CD25^-$ Tfh cells, $CD25^+$ Tfh cells express high levels of inhibitory receptors, such as PD-1 and CTLA-4, with lower levels of IFN-γ and IL-17 and higher TGF-β secretion. Importantly, Tfr cells can suppress the GC reaction of B cells and the antiviral effect of $CD8^+$ T cells. Therefore, Tfh cell dysfunction might disrupt humoral immune responses during CHB infection.

B cells

Anti-HBs antibodies are protective antibodies that can prevent HBV from entering into host hepatocytes and can clear infectious HBV particles from the body[87,88], and B cells are essential for effective HBV control. Although the total number of B cells is enriched during CHB infection[89], previous data revealed that patients with CHB showed a decreased frequency of HBsAg-specific B cells[90]. Furthermore, the production of anti-HBs was defective in patients with CHB[91]. Recent findings indicate that hyperactivated B cells with increased expression of CD69 and CD71, have deficient proliferative capacity and are unable to achieve HBsAg seroconversion in CHB patients.

Burton *et al*[92] found that HBsAg-specific B cells in patients with CHB exhibited a $CD21^-$ $CD27^-$ atypical memory B cell (atMBC) phenotype, which was accompanied by high levels of inhibitory receptors such as PD-1, BTLA, and CD22. atMBCs exhibit impaired survival, proliferation, and cytokine production and cannot normally differentiate into antibody-producing plasma cells, which dampens humoral immune responses in patients with CHB. Poonia *et al*[93] found that HBcAg binding to B cells can induce high expression of the inhibitory receptors Fc receptor-like 5 (FcRL4) and FcRL5 on B cells, as well as dysfunctional phenotypes, and can also suppress the proliferation and activation of B cells mediated by the B cell receptor and TLR signaling. Additionally, HBcAg drives B cell differentiation into IL-10-producing regulatory B (Breg) cells characterized as $CD19^+$ $CD24^{hi}$ $CD38^{hi}$, which suppresses $CD8^+$ T cell responses[89]. Moreover, Breg cells have also been found to promote the conversion of $CD4^+$ $CD25^-$ effector T cells into $CD4^+$ $CD25^+$ Treg cells, thereby participating in the maintenance of immune tolerance during chronic HBV infection[89].

In addition to antibody production, B cells are also considered professional APCs during CHB infection. However, the levels of costimulatory molecules (CD80 and CD40) are significantly decreased in circulating B cells, which might impair the interactions between B cells and effector T cells, thus inducing T cell exhaustion[94]. B cells can also regulate the immune response by secreting cytokines during CHB infection. HBeAg can stimulate B cell activation by promoting B-cell activating factor production *via* IL-6 and IFN-γ secretion[95,96], where IL-6 can play a non-cytolytic antiviral role against HBV by inducing cccDNA decay, reducing HBV transcription, and downregulating the NTPC receptor [97].

NOVEL IMMUNE THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES FOR HBV

Current CHB treatments fail to cure HBV and are often accompanied by serious side effects. The long-term use of HBV drugs may even lead to mutations in HBV polymerase and cause drug resistance[98, 99]. Therefore, to overcome the limitations of clinical CHB therapy, researchers are developing new immune strategies to achieve sustained virologic remission (Table 1).

Monoclonal antibodies

Sustained exposure to a high load of viral antigens leads to T cell exhaustion in patients with CHB. Serum HBsAg levels can be as high as 400 μg/mL in patients with CHB; thus, this phenomenon can play a key role in inhibiting HBV-specific immune responses. Neutralizing antibodies against HBsAg or preS1 eliminated HBV and restored HBV-specific immune responses to preventative HBV vaccines in HBV carrier mice. Gao *et al*[100] identified a novel monoclonal antibody (E6F6) that targets the HBsAg-aa119-125 peptide, which can mediate long-lasting HBsAg clearance and facilitates the HBV-specific T cell response *via* Fc-gamma receptor-mediated phagocytosis. Multiple release inhibitors and monoclonal antibodies against HBsAg have been tested in clinical trials, such as GC1102 (a recombinant human

Table 1 Novel immune therapeutic strategies for clinical chronic hepatitis B treatment

Target	Drug name	Sponsor	Phase	Notes	Ref.
HBsAg inhibitor	REP-2139	Replicor	II	Reduce the level of HBsAg	[101,102]
HBsAg inhibitor	REP-2165	Replicor	II	Reduce the level of HBsAg (similar to REP-2139)	[102]
RIG and NOD agonist	SB9200	Spring Bank	IIb/III	Prolonged IFN-α and IFN-β secretion; Reduce hepatitis virus antigen and DNA	[107]
TLR7 agonist	RO7020531	Roche	I	Activate HBV-specific CD8+ T and Tfh cells; Reduce the frequency of Tregs and MDSCs	[108]
TCR-T cells	HBsAg-TCR-T cells	Lion TCR Pte	I	Safely and efficiently reduced HBsAg levels; Reduced level of HBV DNA and HBsAg	[115]
Therapeutic vaccine	TG1050	Transgene	I	Reduced level of HBV DNA and HBsAg; Long-lasting HBV-specific T cell responses	[125]
Therapeutic vaccine	HBsAg-HBIG (YIC)	National Vaccine and Serum Institute	III	Increase the level of IL-2; Long-lasting HBV-specific T-cell responses	[126]
Therapeutic vaccine	Nasvac	CIGB	III	Sustained control of HBV DNA; Clearance of HBeAg	[127]
Therapeutic vaccine	GS-4774	Gilead	III	Strong immune stimulatory effect on T cells	[128]

HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; HBeAg: Hepatitis B e antigen; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; NOD: nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain; IFN-α: Interferon-α; IFN-β: Interferon-β; IL-2: Interleukin-2; MDSCs: Myeloid-derived suppressor cells; RIG-I: Retinoic acid-inducible gene I; TCR: T-cell receptor; Tfh: Follicular helper T cells; TLR7: Toll-like receptor 7; Tregs: Regulatory T cells.

monoclonal anti-HBs antibody, Green Cross, phase II/III), EYP001 (farnesoid X receptor agonist, Enyo Pharma, phase II), REP-2139 (Replicor, phase II)[101,102], REP-2165 (Replicor, phase II)[102], and RG7834 (Roche, pre-clinical)[103].

Cytokines

Cytokines have been widely used as immunomodulatory agents to regulate immune responses during CHB treatment. For example, IL-12 administration alone can induce IFN-γ secretion and the recovery of exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells in patients with CHB[71]. Moreover, employing IL-12 as an adjuvant combined with the recombinant HBV vaccine (rHBVvac) elicits systemic HBV-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cell responses and restores HBsAg-specific humoral immunity, thereby overcoming immune tolerance in patients with CHB[104]. Recent findings have shown that co-administering GM-CSF with the rHBVvac induces the secretion of HBsAg-specific IFN-γ and CTL responses to clear HBV *in vivo*[105]. In addition, IL-2, IL-15, IL-21, and IL-33 also efficiently clear persistent HBV infection and produce a long-term immune response against HBV reinfection[106].

TLR and RIG-I agonists

Currently, various TLR ligands are used as drugs for clinical CHB therapy, such as SB9200 (Spring Bank, phase IIb/III)[107], RG-7795 (Roche, phase II), RO7020531 (Roche, phase I)[108], GS-9620 (Gilead, phase II), GS-9688 (Gilead, phase II), RG-7854 (Roche, phase I), and JNJ-4964 (Janssen, preclinical). Data from previous studies have shown that GS9620 (a TLR7 agonist) can upregulate IFN-α production, restore the effector functions of $CD8^+$ T cells and NK cells, and decrease HBsAg and HBeAg titers. Single-stranded RNA40 (a TLR8 agonist) can selectively induce IL-12, IL-18, and IFN-γ secretion by monocytes in patients with CHB, which is beneficial for HBV clearance[109]. SB9200, an agonist of RIG-I and nucleotide binding oligomerization domain containing 2, can stimulate prolonged IFN-α and IFN-β secretion and ISG activation and efficiently reduce hepatic woodchuck hepatitis virus antigen and DNA levels in infected woodchucks[107]. Interestingly, compared with entecavir administration, SB9200 pretreatment better reduces HBV virion production[110]. Additionally, we found that a small interfering RNA targeting HBx (3p-siHBx) induced RIG-I activation, which improved the immune microenvironment and triggered the activation of NK cells and $CD8^+$ T cells in HBV-carrier mice[111].

Immune checkpoint blockade

Prolonged exposure to HBV leads to NK cell dysfunction and hyperexpression of immune checkpoint proteins in T cells. As an alternative approach, blocking the inhibitory receptor NKG2A increases the activity of human NK cells to promote HBsAg clearance[112]. In addition to direct anti-HBV effects,

recent data have shown that NK cells in patients with CHB selectively inhibit HBV-specific T cell responses *via* an IL-10-dependent pathway[39]. Furthermore, NK cells in NA-treated CHB patients expressing high levels of death receptor ligands, such as TNF-related apoptosis inducing ligand (TRAIL) or NKG2D, can mediate the lysis of activated T cells, thereby contributing to the development of chronic HBV infection[46,49]. Depleting inhibitory NK cells and blocking the NKG2D and TRAIL pathways during NA treatment further induces significant improvements in terms of HBV-specific T cell functions to achieve an HBV cure[79]. Additionally, blocking inhibitory receptors, such as PD-1, 2B4, and Tim-3, can restore exhausted HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cells by promoting the recovery of cytotoxicity, cytokine production, and proliferation, offering an excellent opportunity to achieve sustained virologic control[113].

T cell receptor/chimeric antigen receptor T cells

The adoptive transfer of autologous T cells, such as chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells, is another promising immunotherapeutic option for HBV therapy. These CAR T cells can directly recognize HBV antigens on infected hepatocytes and HBV-related HCC cells independently of HLA, without any need for antigen processing and presentation[114]. Qasim *et al*[115] found that genetically modified T cell receptor (TCR) T cells safely and effectively targeted HBsAg and reduced HBsAg levels in a patient with HBV-related HCC who had undergone liver transplantation. As an alternative strategy, CAR T cells expressing a recombinant HBsAg-specific antibody together with CD28 and CD3 zeta could also recognize and eliminate HBsAg-positive hepatocytes *in vitro*. Moreover, HBsAg-CAR-$CD8^+$ T cells localized to the liver and rapidly reduced HBV replication without significant liver damage after adoptive transfer in a transgenic mouse model of HBV[116]. Additionally, HBsAg-CAR T cells specifically decreased plasma HBsAg, HBV-DNA, and HBV core-positive hepatocytes in persistently HBV-infected chimeric mice with humanized livers after adoptive transfer of HBsAg-CAR-T cells[117], thereby providing a potential therapeutic approach for HBV.

However, specific challenges related to TCR or CAR T-cell therapy remain for HBV treatment, including the risk of developing severe liver damage and the suppressive effects of transferred TCR/CAR T cells due to the immune tolerance of the liver. To prevent severe side effects, such as liver damage and uncontrolled proliferation, Kah *et al*[118] developed a method for transient mRNA electroporation into engineered HBV-TCR T cells. In a separate study, PD-1 knockdown in HBV-TCR-T cells increased their effector functions and ability to kill tumor cells in the PD-$L1^{hi}$ liver microenvironment [119]. In addition, engineered CAR T cells to overexpress c-Jun, an AP-1 transcription factor, showed enhanced expansion and functional capacity with improved antitumor efficiency[120]. These findings have facilitated the development of TCR/CAR T cells for clinical CHB treatment.

Therapeutic vaccines

Therapeutic vaccination presents an attractive strategy for HBV eradication. A novel hepatitis B therapeutic vaccine could overcome immune tolerance; effectively induce powerful $CD4^+$ T cells, $CD8^+$ T cells, and humoral immune responses; and ultimately achieve sustained control of CHB infection. Kosinska *et al*[121] proposed approaches for developing safe and effective therapeutic vaccines, including: Designing potent vaccine components or schemes to prime antigen-specific immune responses; combining checkpoint inhibitors with other strategies to restore exhausted T cells; and Reducing HBV-related antigen levels to prevent T cell attrition and exhaustion. Based on this guidance, we prepared HBsAg nanogels (Ng) with chitosan (CS) and poly γ-glutamic acid (γ-PGA). Interestingly, we found that single-dose HBsAg CS-γ-PGA Ng immunization, especially HBsAg Ng (+), enhanced DC maturation and induced HBV-specific cellular and humoral immunity, and promoted the generation of effector memory T cells for HBV clearance[122]. Recent data also showed that a ferritin NP-preS1 vaccine manifested an efficient antibody response, resulting in efficient viral clearance by delivering preS1 to $SIGNR1^+$ DC[123]. Additionally, we demonstrated that employing poly I:C as an adjuvant combined with rHBVvac also efficiently and safely decreased HBV DNA, HBV RNA, and HBsAg in an HBV carrier mouse model. Importantly, we found that the therapeutic vaccine partially reversed immune tolerance and promoted HBV-specific $CD8^+$ T cell terminal differentiation into $KLRG1^+$ effector T cells, thereby playing a crucial role in HBV clearance[124].

Multiple therapeutic vaccines have been developed and administered for CHB treatment with different clinical outcomes. TG1050, a novel HBV-targeted immunotherapeutic vaccine based on a non-replicative adenovirus vector encoding multiple HBV antigens (S, core, and polymerase), effectively induced polyfunctional and long-lasting HBV-specific T cell responses and reduced HBV DNA and HBsAg levels *in vivo*. The results of a phase Ib trial showed that TG1050 induced the production of IFN-γ-producing HBV-specific T cells and safely achieved effective viral suppression[125]. Currently, TG1050 is being investigated in phase II clinical trials and may be a very promising therapeutic vaccine for HBV, especially in combination with TLR9 agonists. Additional therapeutic HBV vaccines under investigation in clinical trials worldwide including HBsAg-HBIG ("YIC", National Vaccine and Serum Institute, phase III)[126], Nasvac (CIGB, phase II/III)[127], GS-4774 (Gilead, phase II)[128], HepTcell (Altimmune, phase Ib), AIC 649 (AiCuris, phase I), INO-1800 (Inovio, phase I), HB-110 (Ichor, phase I), JNJ-64300535 (Janssen, phase I), TomegaVax HBV (TomegaVax, preclinical), and VR-CHB01 (Vical, preclinical).

CONCLUSION

PEG-IFN-α and NAs are the current major treatment strategies for CHB. Although these antiviral drugs can partly inhibit and eliminate HBV, viral breakthroughs may result from non-adherence due to limitations such as the high cost, the emergence of viral resistance, a long treatment cycle, and adverse side effects. Ideal anti-HBV strategies should meet the following criteria: the strong ability to inhibit virus replication with low drug resistance; stimulation of antiviral immune responses; Long-lasting effects without recurrence; and eventual removal of the virus. Therefore, the design of novel strategies to clear HBV and achieve long-lasting immune control remains a challenging task. Persistent CHB infection arises as a consequence of the complex interactions between HBV and the host innate and adaptive immune systems. Therefore, understanding the immunological mechanisms involved in CHB infection is important for designing potential therapeutic strategies for clinical CHB treatment. In this review, we detailed the immune biological characteristics and escape mechanisms of HBV and discussed novel immune-based therapies. Targeting a combination of viral and host factors provides the best possible chance for achieving a functional cure for CHB.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zhao HJ and Zhang J designed the structure of this review; Zhao HJ wrote the paper; Hu YF contributed to the literature review; Zhao HJ, Han QJ, and Zhang J revised the paper; All authors approved the final version.

Supported by National Science Foundation for Young Scientists of China, No. 82001687; National Major Science and Technology Project for Control and Prevention of Major Infectious Diseases, No. 2018ZX10301401; National Postdoctoral Program for Innovative Talents, No. BX20190192; China Postdoctoral Science Foundation, No. 2020M672064; and National Basic Research Program of China, No. 2013CB531503.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no potential conflicts of interest to declare.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Hua-Jun Zhao 0000-0001-6619-8329; Yi-Fei Hu 0000-0001-8619-6558; Qiu-Ju Han 0000-0002-6511-2308; Jian Zhang 0000-0001-5106-1397.

S-Editor: Vasudevan A
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Ma YJ

REFERENCES

1 **Tang LSY**, Covert E, Wilson E, Kottilil S. Chronic Hepatitis B Infection: A Review. *JAMA* 2018; **319**: 1802-1813 [PMID: 29715359 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2018.3795]
2 **Schweitzer A**, Horn J, Mikolajczyk RT, Krause G, Ott JJ. Estimations of worldwide prevalence of chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a systematic review of data published between 1965 and 2013. *Lancet* 2015; **386**: 1546-1555 [PMID: 26231459 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)61412-X]
3 **Tian Y**, Kuo CF, Akbari O, Ou JH. Maternal-Derived Hepatitis B Virus e Antigen Alters Macrophage Function in Offspring to Drive Viral Persistence after Vertical Transmission. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 1204-1214 [PMID: 27156385 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.04.008]
4 **Mani SKK**, Andrisani O. Interferon signaling during Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) infection and HBV-associated hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cytokine* 2019; **124**: 154518 [PMID: 30126685 DOI: 10.1016/j.cyto.2018.08.012]
5 **Bonjardim CA**, Ferreira PC, Kroon EG. Interferons: signaling, antiviral and viral evasion. *Immunol Lett* 2009; **122**: 1-11 [PMID: 19059436 DOI: 10.1016/j.imlet.2008.11.002]
6 **O'Brien TR**, Kohaar I, Pfeiffer RM, Maeder D, Yeager M, Schadt EE, Prokunina-Olsson L. Risk alleles for chronic hepatitis B are associated with decreased mRNA expression of HLA-DPA1 and HLA-DPB1 in normal human liver. *Genes Immun* 2011; **12**: 428-433 [PMID: 21346778 DOI: 10.1038/gene.2011.11]
7 **Janeway CA Jr**. How the immune system works to protect the host from infection: a personal view. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2001; **98**: 7461-7468 [PMID: 11390983 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.131202998]
8 **Riera Romo M**, Pérez-Martínez D, Castillo Ferrer C. Innate immunity in vertebrates: an overview. *Immunology* 2016;

148: 125-139 [PMID: 26878338 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12597]
9 **Hopcraft SE**, Damania B. Tumour viruses and innate immunity. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2017; **372** [PMID: 28893934 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2016.0267]
10 **Yu S**, Chen J, Wu M, Chen H, Kato N, Yuan Z. Hepatitis B virus polymerase inhibits RIG-I- and Toll-like receptor 3-mediated beta interferon induction in human hepatocytes through interference with interferon regulatory factor 3 activation and dampening of the interaction between TBK1/IKKepsilon and DDX3. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 2080-2090 [PMID: 20375222 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.020552-0]
11 **Hou ZH**, Han QJ, Zhang C, Tian ZG, Zhang J. miR146a impairs the IFN-induced anti-HBV immune response by downregulating STAT1 in hepatocytes. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 58-68 [PMID: 23890093 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12244]
12 **Jiang J**, Tang H. Mechanism of inhibiting type I interferon induction by hepatitis B virus X protein. *Protein Cell* 2010; **1**: 1106-1117 [PMID: 21213104 DOI: 10.1007/s13238-010-0141-8]
13 **Cho IR**, Oh M, Koh SS, Malilas W, Srisuttee R, Jhun BH, Pellegrini S, Fuchs SY, Chung YH. Hepatitis B virus X protein inhibits extracellular IFN-α-mediated signal transduction by downregulation of type I IFN receptor. *Int J Mol Med* 2012; **29**: 581-586 [PMID: 22218495 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2012.879]
14 **Chen J**, Xu W, Chen Y, Xie X, Zhang Y, Ma C, Yang Q, Han Y, Zhu C, Xiong Y, Wu K, Liu F, Liu Y, Wu J. Matrix Metalloproteinase 9 Facilitates Hepatitis B Virus Replication through Binding with Type I Interferon (IFN) Receptor 1 To Repress IFN/JAK/STAT Signaling. *J Virol* 2017; **91** [PMID: 28122987 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01824-16]
15 **Lei Q**, Li T, Kong L, Li L, Ding X, Wang X, Zhang X, Qin B. HBV-Pol is crucial for HBV-mediated inhibition of inflammasome activation and IL-1β production. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 2273-2284 [PMID: 31419377 DOI: 10.1111/liv.14214]
16 **Li Y**, Xia Y, Han M, Chen G, Zhang D, Thasler WE, Protzer U, Ning Q. IFN-α-mediated Base Excision Repair Pathway Correlates with Antiviral Response Against Hepatitis B Virus Infection. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 12715 [PMID: 28983111 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-13082-z]
17 **Yuan Y**, Yuan H, Yang G, Yun H, Zhao M, Liu Z, Zhao L, Geng Y, Liu L, Wang J, Zhang H, Wang Y, Zhang XD. IFN-α confers epigenetic regulation of HBV cccDNA minichromosome by modulating GCN5-mediated succinylation of histone H3K79 to clear HBV cccDNA. *Clin Epigenetics* 2020; **12**: 135 [PMID: 32894195 DOI: 10.1186/s13148-020-00928-z]
18 **Imam H**, Kim GW, Mir SA, Khan M, Siddiqui A. Interferon-stimulated gene 20 (ISG20) selectively degrades N6-methyladenosine modified Hepatitis B Virus transcripts. *PLoS Pathog* 2020; **16**: e1008338 [PMID: 32059034 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1008338]
19 **Tan G**, Yi Z, Song H, Xu F, Li F, Aliyari R, Zhang H, Du P, Ding Y, Niu J, Wang X, Su L, Qin FX, Cheng G. Type-I-IFN-Stimulated Gene TRIM5γ Inhibits HBV Replication by Promoting HBx Degradation. *Cell Rep* 2019; **29**: 3551-3563.e3 [PMID: 31825835 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2019.11.041]
20 **Wang YX**, Niklasch M, Liu T, Wang Y, Shi B, Yuan W, Baumert TF, Yuan Z, Tong S, Nassal M, Wen YM. Interferon-inducible MX2 is a host restriction factor of hepatitis B virus replication. *J Hepatol* 2020; **72**: 865-876 [PMID: 31863794 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.12.009]
21 **Xia Y**, Cheng X, Blossey CK, Wisskirchen K, Esser K, Protzer U. Secreted Interferon-Inducible Factors Restrict Hepatitis B and C Virus Entry In Vitro. *J Immunol Res* 2017; **2017**: 4828936 [PMID: 28367455 DOI: 10.1155/2017/4828936]
22 **Madera S**, Rapp M, Firth MA, Beilke JN, Lanier LL, Sun JC. Type I IFN promotes NK cell expansion during viral infection by protecting NK cells against fratricide. *J Exp Med* 2016; **213**: 225-233 [PMID: 26755706 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20150712]
23 **Novak N**, Koch S, Allam JP, Bieber T. Dendritic cells: bridging innate and adaptive immunity in atopic dermatitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; **125**: 50-59 [PMID: 20109736 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2009.11.019]
24 **Yonejima A**, Mizukoshi E, Tamai T, Nakagawa H, Kitahara M, Yamashita T, Arai K, Terashima T, Iida N, Fushimi K, Okada H, Sakai Y, Honda M, Kaneko S. Characteristics of Impaired Dendritic Cell Function in Patients With Hepatitis B Virus Infection. *Hepatology* 2019; **70**: 25-39 [PMID: 30938456 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30637]
25 **Op den Brouw ML**, Binda RS, van Roosmalen MH, Protzer U, Janssen HL, van der Molen RG, Woltman AM. Hepatitis B virus surface antigen impairs myeloid dendritic cell function: a possible immune escape mechanism of hepatitis B virus. *Immunology* 2009; **126**: 280-289 [PMID: 18624732 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2008.02896.x]
26 **Li M**, Zhou ZH, Sun XH, Zhang X, Zhu XJ, Jin SG, Gao YT, Jiang Y, Gao YQ. Hepatitis B core antigen upregulates B7-H1 on dendritic cells by activating the AKT/ERK/P38 pathway: a possible mechanism of hepatitis B virus persistence. *Lab Invest* 2016; **96**: 1156-1164 [PMID: 27617403 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.2016.96]
27 **Lan S**, Wu L, Wang X, Wu J, Lin X, Wu W, Huang Z. Impact of HBeAg on the maturation and function of dendritic cells. *Int J Infect Dis* 2016; **46**: 42-48 [PMID: 27044523 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2016.03.024]
28 **Buschow SI**, Biesta PJ, Groothuismink ZMA, Erler NS, Vanwolleghem T, Ho E, Najera I, Ait-Goughoulte M, de Knegt RJ, Boonstra A, Woltman AM. TLR7 polymorphism, sex and chronic HBV infection influence plasmacytoid DC maturation by TLR7 ligands. *Antiviral Res* 2018; **157**: 27-37 [PMID: 29964062 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2018.06.015]
29 **Ouaguia L**, Leroy V, Dufeu-Duchesne T, Durantel D, Decaens T, Hubert M, Valladeau-Guilemond J, Bendriss-Vermare N, Chaperot L, Aspord C. Circulating and Hepatic BDCA1+, BDCA2+, and BDCA3+ Dendritic Cells Are Differentially Subverted in Patients With Chronic HBV Infection. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 112 [PMID: 30778353 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00112]
30 **Xu Y**, Hu Y, Shi B, Zhang X, Wang J, Zhang Z, Shen F, Zhang Q, Sun S, Yuan Z. HBsAg inhibits TLR9-mediated activation and IFN-alpha production in plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Mol Immunol* 2009; **46**: 2640-2646 [PMID: 19501403 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2009.04.031]
31 **Jenne CN**, Kubes P. Immune surveillance by the liver. *Nat Immunol* 2013; **14**: 996-1006 [PMID: 24048121 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2691]
32 **Varol C**, Mildner A, Jung S. Macrophages: development and tissue specialization. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2015; **33**: 643-675 [PMID: 25861979 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032414-112220]
33 **Wu LL**, Peng WH, Wu HL, Miaw SC, Yeh SH, Yang HC, Liao PH, Lin JS, Chen YR, Hong YT, Wang HY, Chen PJ, Chen DS. Lymphocyte Antigen 6 Complex, Locus C^{+} Monocytes and Kupffer Cells Orchestrate Liver Immune Responses

Against Hepatitis B Virus in Mice. *Hepatology* 2019; **69**: 2364-2380 [PMID: 30661248 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30510]
34 **Li H**, Zheng HW, Chen H, Xing ZZ, You H, Cong M, Jia JD. Hepatitis B virus particles preferably induce Kupffer cells to produce TGF-β1 over pro-inflammatory cytokines. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 328-333 [PMID: 22177317 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.11.005]
35 **Boltjes A**, van Montfoort N, Biesta PJ, Op den Brouw ML, Kwekkeboom J, van der Laan LJ, Janssen HL, Boonstra A, Woltman AM. Kupffer cells interact with hepatitis B surface antigen in vivo and in vitro, leading to proinflammatory cytokine production and natural killer cell function. *J Infect Dis* 2015; **211**: 1268-1278 [PMID: 25362194 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiu599]
36 **Li M**, Sun R, Xu L, Yin W, Chen Y, Zheng X, Lian Z, Wei H, Tian Z. Kupffer Cells Support Hepatitis B Virus-Mediated CD8+ T Cell Exhaustion *via* Hepatitis B Core Antigen-TLR2 Interactions in Mice. *J Immunol* 2015; **195**: 3100-3109 [PMID: 26304988 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1500839]
37 **Yu X**, Lan P, Hou X, Han Q, Lu N, Li T, Jiao C, Zhang J, Zhang C, Tian Z. HBV inhibits LPS-induced NLRP3 inflammasome activation and IL-1β production *via* suppressing the NF-κB pathway and ROS production. *J Hepatol* 2017; **66**: 693-702 [PMID: 28027970 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2016.12.018]
38 **Wang S**, Chen Z, Hu C, Qian F, Cheng Y, Wu M, Shi B, Chen J, Hu Y, Yuan Z. Hepatitis B virus surface antigen selectively inhibits TLR2 ligand-induced IL-12 production in monocytes/macrophages by interfering with JNK activation. *J Immunol* 2013; **190**: 5142-5151 [PMID: 23585678 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1201625]
39 **Li H**, Zhai N, Wang Z, Song H, Yang Y, Cui A, Li T, Wang G, Niu J, Crispe IN, Su L, Tu Z. Regulatory NK cells mediated between immunosuppressive monocytes and dysfunctional T cells in chronic HBV infection. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 2035-2044 [PMID: 28899983 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314098]
40 **Zang M**, Li Y, He H, Ding H, Chen K, Du J, Chen T, Wu Z, Liu H, Wang D, Cai J, Qu C. IL-23 production of liver inflammatory macrophages to damaged hepatocytes promotes hepatocellular carcinoma development after chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Biochim Biophys Acta Mol Basis Dis* 2018; **1864**: 3759-3770 [PMID: 30292634 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2018.10.004]
41 **Dai K**, Huang L, Sun X, Yang L, Gong Z. Hepatic CD206-positive macrophages express amphiregulin to promote the immunosuppressive activity of regulatory T cells in HBV infection. *J Leukoc Biol* 2015; **98**: 1071-1080 [PMID: 26216935 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.4A0415-152R]
42 **Agraz-Cibrian JM**, Segura-Ortega JE, Delgado-Rizo V, Fafutis-Morris M. Alterations in neutrophil extracellular traps is associated with the degree of decompensation of liver cirrhosis. *J Infect Dev Ctries* 2016; **10**: 512-517 [PMID: 27249527 DOI: 10.3855/jidc.7165]
43 **Hu S**, Liu X, Gao Y, Zhou R, Wei M, Dong J, Yan H, Zhao Y. Hepatitis B Virus Inhibits Neutrophil Extracellular Trap Release by Modulating Reactive Oxygen Species Production and Autophagy. *J Immunol* 2019; **202**: 805-815 [PMID: 30567731 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1800871]
44 **Stelma F**, Willemse SB, Erken R, de Niet A, Sinnige MJ, van Dort K, Zaaijer HL, van Leeuwen EMM, Kootstra NA, Reesink HW. Dynamics of the Immune Response in Acute Hepatitis B Infection. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2017; **4**: ofx231 [PMID: 29302605 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofx231]
45 **Yu WH**, Cosgrove C, Berger CT, Cheney PC, Krykbaeva M, Kim AY, Lewis-Ximenez L, Lauer GM, Alter G. ADCC-Mediated $CD56^{DIM}$ NK Cell Responses Are Associated with Early HBsAg Clearance in Acute HBV Infection. *Pathog Immun* 2018; **3**: 2-18 [PMID: 29541698 DOI: 10.20411/pai.v3i1.228]
46 **Ghosh S**, Nandi M, Pal S, Mukhopadhyay D, Chakraborty BC, Khatun M, Bhowmick D, Mondal RK, Das S, Das K, Ghosh R, Banerjee S, Santra A, Chatterjee M, Chowdhury A, Datta S. Natural killer cells contribute to hepatic injury and help in viral persistence during progression of hepatitis B e-antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2016; **22**: 733.e9-733.e19 [PMID: 27208430 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2016.05.009]
47 **Fisicaro P**, Rossi M, Vecchi A, Acerbi G, Barili V, Laccabue D, Montali I, Zecca A, Penna A, Missale G, Ferrari C, Boni C. The Good and the Bad of Natural Killer Cells in Virus Control: Perspective for Anti-HBV Therapy. *Int J Mol Sci* 2019; **20** [PMID: 31614928 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20205080]
48 **Han W**, Ni Q, Liu K, Yao Y, Zhao D, Liu X, Chen Y. Decreased CD122 on $CD56^{dim}$ NK associated with its impairment in asymptomatic chronic HBV carriers with high levels of HBV DNA, HBsAg and HBeAg. *Life Sci* 2018; **195**: 53-60 [PMID: 29307521 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2018.01.001]
49 **Yang Y**, Han Q, Zhang C, Xiao M, Zhang J. Hepatitis B virus antigens impair NK cell function. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2016; **38**: 291-297 [PMID: 27341035 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2016.06.015]
50 **Zheng B**, Yang Y, Han Q, Yin C, Pan Z, Zhang J. STAT3 directly regulates NKp46 transcription in NK cells of HBeAg-negative CHB patients. *J Leukoc Biol* 2019; **106**: 987-996 [PMID: 31132315 DOI: 10.1002/JLB.2A1118-421R]
51 **Yang Y**, Han Q, Hou Z, Zhang C, Tian Z, Zhang J. Exosomes mediate hepatitis B virus (HBV) transmission and NK-cell dysfunction. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2017; **14**: 465-475 [PMID: 27238466 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2016.24]
52 **Li JF**, Dai XP, Zhang W, Sun SH, Zeng Y, Zhao GY, Kou ZH, Guo Y, Yu H, Du LY, Jiang SB, Zhou YS. Upregulation of microRNA-146a by hepatitis B virus X protein contributes to hepatitis development by downregulating complement factor H. *mBio* 2015; **6** [PMID: 25805734 DOI: 10.1128/mBio.02459-14]
53 **Xu D**, Han Q, Hou Z, Zhang C, Zhang J. miR-146a negatively regulates NK cell functions *via* STAT1 signaling. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2017; **14**: 712-720 [PMID: 26996068 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2015.113]
54 **You CR**, Lee SW, Jang JW, Yoon SK. Update on hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 13293-13305 [PMID: 25309066 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i37.13293]
55 **Wang X**, Dong Q, Li Q, Li Y, Zhao D, Sun J, Fu J, Meng F, Lin H, Luan J, Liu B, Wang M, Wang FS, He F, Tang L. Dysregulated Response of Follicular Helper T Cells to Hepatitis B Surface Antigen Promotes HBV Persistence in Mice and Associates With Outcomes of Patients. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **154**: 2222-2236 [PMID: 29544722 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.03.021]
56 **Terrault NA**, Levy MT, Cheung KW, Jourdain G. Viral hepatitis and pregnancy. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **18**: 117-130 [PMID: 33046891 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-020-00361-w]
57 **Matei HV**, Vica ML, Siserman CV. Association between HLA class II alleles and hepatitis B virus infection in

Transylvania, Romania. *Immunol Invest* 2018; **47**: 735-744 [PMID: 29979894 DOI: 10.1080/08820139.2018.1489832]

58 **Zhang Z**, Wang C, Liu Z, Zou G, Li J, Lu M. Host Genetic Determinants of Hepatitis B Virus Infection. *Front Genet* 2019; **10**: 696 [PMID: 31475028 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2019.00696]

59 **Kamatani Y**, Wattanapokayakit S, Ochi H, Kawaguchi T, Takahashi A, Hosono N, Kubo M, Tsunoda T, Kamatani N, Kumada H, Puseenam A, Sura T, Daigo Y, Chayama K, Chantratita W, Nakamura Y, Matsuda K. A genome-wide association study identifies variants in the HLA-DP locus associated with chronic hepatitis B in Asians. *Nat Genet* 2009; **41**: 591-595 [PMID: 19349983 DOI: 10.1038/ng.348]

60 **Li Y**, Si L, Zhai Y, Hu Y, Hu Z, Bei JX, Xie B, Ren Q, Cao P, Yang F, Song Q, Bao Z, Zhang H, Han Y, Wang Z, Chen X, Xia X, Yan H, Wang R, Zhang Y, Gao C, Meng J, Tu X, Liang X, Cui Y, Liu Y, Wu X, Li Z, Wang H, Hu B, He M, Gao Z, Xu X, Ji H, Yu C, Sun Y, Xing B, Yang X, Tan A, Wu C, Jia W, Li S, Zeng YX, Shen H, He F, Mo Z, Zhou G. Genome-wide association study identifies 8p21.3 associated with persistent hepatitis B virus infection among Chinese. *Nat Commun* 2016; **7**: 11664 [PMID: 27244555 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms11664]

61 **Huang YH**, Liao SF, Khor SS, Lin YJ, Chen HY, Chang YH, Huang YH, Lu SN, Lee HW, Ko WY, Huang C, Liu PC, Chen YJ, Wu PF, Chu HW, Wu PE, Tokunaga K, Shen CY, Lee MH. Large-scale genome-wide association study identifies HLA class II variants associated with chronic HBV infection: a study from Taiwan Biobank. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **52**: 682-691 [PMID: 32573827 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15887]

62 **Choga WT**, Anderson M, Zumbika E, Phinius BB, Mbangiwa T, Bhebhe LN, Baruti K, Kimathi PO, Seatla KK, Musonda RM, Bell TG, Moyo S, Blackard JT, Gaseitsiwe S. In Silico Prediction of Human Leukocytes Antigen (HLA) Class II Binding Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) Peptides in Botswana. *Viruses* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32640609 DOI: 10.3390/v12070731]

63 **Murata Y**, Kawashima K, Sheikh K, Tanaka Y, Isogawa M. Intrahepatic Cross-Presentation and Hepatocellular Antigen Presentation Play Distinct Roles in the Induction of Hepatitis B Virus-Specific $CD8^+$ T Cell Responses. *J Virol* 2018; **92** [PMID: 30089700 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00920-18]

64 **Li TY**, Yang Y, Zhou G, Tu ZK. Immune suppression in chronic hepatitis B infection associated liver disease: A review. *World J Gastroenterol* 2019; **25**: 3527-3537 [PMID: 31367154 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v25.i27.3527]

65 **Lopes AR**, Kellam P, Das A, Dunn C, Kwan A, Turner J, Peppa D, Gilson RJ, Gehring A, Bertoletti A, Maini MK. Bim-mediated deletion of antigen-specific CD8 T cells in patients unable to control HBV infection. *J Clin Invest* 2008; **118**: 1835-1845 [PMID: 18398508 DOI: 10.1172/JCI33402]

66 **Boni C**, Fisicaro P, Valdatta C, Amadei B, Di Vincenzo P, Giuberti T, Laccabue D, Zerbini A, Cavalli A, Missale G, Bertoletti A, Ferrari C. Characterization of hepatitis B virus (HBV)-specific T-cell dysfunction in chronic HBV infection. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 4215-4225 [PMID: 17287266 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02844-06]

67 **Kurktschiev PD**, Raziorrouh B, Schraut W, Backmund M, Wächtler M, Wendtner CM, Bengsch B, Thimme R, Denk G, Zachoval R, Dick A, Spannagl M, Haas J, Diepolder HM, Jung MC, Gruener NH. Dysfunctional CD8+ T cells in hepatitis B and C are characterized by a lack of antigen-specific T-bet induction. *J Exp Med* 2014; **211**: 2047-2059 [PMID: 25225458 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20131333]

68 **Heim K**, Neumann-Haefelin C, Thimme R, Hofmann M. Heterogeneity of HBV-Specific $CD8^+$ T-Cell Failure: Implications for Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 2240 [PMID: 31620140 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02240]

69 **Ye B**, Liu X, Li X, Kong H, Tian L, Chen Y. T-cell exhaustion in chronic hepatitis B infection: current knowledge and clinical significance. *Cell Death Dis* 2015; **6**: e1694 [PMID: 25789969 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2015.42]

70 **Schuch A**, Salimi Alizei E, Heim K, Wieland D, Kiraithe MM, Kemming J, Llewellyn-Lacey S, Sogukpinar Ö, Ni Y, Urban S, Zimmermann P, Nassal M, Emmerich F, Price DA, Bengsch B, Luxenburger H, Neumann-Haefelin C, Hofmann M, Thimme R. Phenotypic and functional differences of HBV core-specific versus HBV polymerase-specific CD8+ T cells in chronically HBV-infected patients with low viral load. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 905-915 [PMID: 30622109 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2018-316641]

71 **Schurich A**, Pallett LJ, Lubowiecki M, Singh HD, Gill US, Kennedy PT, Nastouli E, Tanwar S, Rosenberg W, Maini MK. The third signal cytokine IL-12 rescues the anti-viral function of exhausted HBV-specific CD8 T cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003208 [PMID: 23516358 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003208]

72 **Man K**, Gabriel SS, Liao Y, Gloury R, Preston S, Henstridge DC, Pellegrini M, Zehn D, Berberich-Siebelt F, Febbraio MA, Shi W, Kallies A. Transcription Factor IRF4 Promotes $CD8^+$ T Cell Exhaustion and Limits the Development of Memory-like T Cells during Chronic Infection. *Immunity* 2017; **47**: 1129-1141.e5 [PMID: 29246443 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2017.11.021]

73 **Fisicaro P**, Barili V, Montanini B, Acerbi G, Ferracin M, Guerrieri F, Salerno D, Boni C, Massari M, Cavallo MC, Grossi G, Giuberti T, Lampertico P, Missale G, Levrero M, Ottonello S, Ferrari C. Targeting mitochondrial dysfunction can restore antiviral activity of exhausted HBV-specific CD8 T cells in chronic hepatitis B. *Nat Med* 2017; **23**: 327-336 [PMID: 28165481 DOI: 10.1038/nm.4275]

74 **Schurich A**, Pallett LJ, Jajbhay D, Wijngaarden J, Otano I, Gill US, Hansi N, Kennedy PT, Nastouli E, Gilson R, Frezza C, Henson SM, Maini MK. Distinct Metabolic Requirements of Exhausted and Functional Virus-Specific CD8 T Cells in the Same Host. *Cell Rep* 2016; **16**: 1243-1252 [PMID: 27452473 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2016.06.078]

75 **Williams MA**, Bevan MJ. Effector and memory CTL differentiation. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2007; **25**: 171-192 [PMID: 17129182 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141548]

76 **Yi JS**, Cox MA, Zajac AJ. T-cell exhaustion: characteristics, causes and conversion. *Immunology* 2010; **129**: 474-481 [PMID: 20201977 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2010.03255.x]

77 **Li M**, Sun XH, Zhu XJ, Jin SG, Zeng ZJ, Zhou ZH, Yu Z, Gao YQ. HBcAg induces PD-1 upregulation on CD4+T cells through activation of JNK, ERK and PI3K/AKT pathways in chronic hepatitis-B-infected patients. *Lab Invest* 2012; **92**: 295-304 [PMID: 22042085 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.2011.157]

78 **Wang H**, Wu D, Wang X, Chen G, Zhang Y, Yan W, Luo X, Han M, Ning Q. Hepatitis B virus surface protein-induced hPIAS1 transcription requires TAL1, E47, MYOG, NFI, and MAPK signal pathways. *Biol Chem* 2016; **397**: 1173-1185 [PMID: 27276529 DOI: 10.1515/hsz-2015-0290]

79 **Boni C**, Lampertico P, Talamona L, Giuberti T, Invernizzi F, Barili V, Fisicaro P, Rossi M, Cavallo MC, Vecchi A, Pedrazzi G, Alfieri A, Colombo M, Missale G, Ferrari C. Natural killer cell phenotype modulation and natural killer/T-cell

interplay in nucleos(t)ide analogue-treated hepatitis e antigen-negative patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 1697-1709 [PMID: 26361374 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28155]

80 **Zimmerli SC**, Harari A, Cellerai C, Vallelian F, Bart PA, Pantaleo G. HIV-1-specific IFN-gamma/IL-2-secreting CD8 T cells support CD4-independent proliferation of HIV-1-specific CD8 T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2005; **102**: 7239-7244 [PMID: 15872023 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0502393102]

81 **Kondo Y**, Shimosegawa T. Significant roles of regulatory T cells and myeloid derived suppressor cells in hepatitis B virus persistent infection and hepatitis B virus-related HCCs. *Int J Mol Sci* 2015; **16**: 3307-3322 [PMID: 25654227 DOI: 10.3390/ijms16023307]

82 **Qi H**. T follicular helper cells in space-time. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2016; **16**: 612-625 [PMID: 27573485 DOI: 10.1038/nri.2016.94]

83 **Ryg-Cornejo V**, Ioannidis LJ, Ly A, Chiu CY, Tellier J, Hill DL, Preston SP, Pellegrini M, Yu D, Nutt SL, Kallies A, Hansen DS. Severe Malaria Infections Impair Germinal Center Responses by Inhibiting T Follicular Helper Cell Differentiation. *Cell Rep* 2016; **14**: 68-81 [PMID: 26725120 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2015.12.006]

84 **Vyas AK**, Sharma BC, Sarin SK, Trehanpati N. Immune correlates of hepatitis B surface antigen spontaneous seroconversion in hepatitis B e antigen negative chronic hepatitis B patients. *Liver Int* 2018; **38**: 38-49 [PMID: 28500636 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13475]

85 **Zhang L**, Li H, Ren H, Hu P. Circulating PD-1^{hi}CXCR5^{+}CD4^{+} T cells are associated with a decrease in hepatitis B surface antigen levels in patients with chronic hepatitis B who are receiving peginterferon-α therapy. *Mol Immunol* 2018; **103**: 270-278 [PMID: 30340072 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2018.10.011]

86 **Wang R**, Xie R, Song Z. Circulating regulatory Tfh cells are enriched in patients with chronic hepatitis B infection and induce the differentiation of regulatory B cells. *Exp Cell Res* 2018; **365**: 171-176 [PMID: 29501568 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2018.02.031]

87 **Corti D**, Benigni F, Shouval D. Viral envelope-specific antibodies in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Curr Opin Virol* 2018; **30**: 48-57 [PMID: 29738926 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2018.04.002]

88 **Ma Z**, Zhang E, Gao S, Xiong Y, Lu M. Toward a Functional Cure for Hepatitis B: The Rationale and Challenges for Therapeutic Targeting of the B Cell Immune Response. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 2308 [PMID: 31608073 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02308]

89 **Liu Y**, Cheng LS, Wu SD, Wang SQ, Li L, She WM, Li J, Wang JY, Jiang W. IL-10-producing regulatory B-cells suppressed effector T-cells but enhanced regulatory T-cells in chronic HBV infection. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 2016; **130**: 907-919 [PMID: 26980345 DOI: 10.1042/CS20160069]

90 **Tian C**, Chen Y, Liu Y, Wang S, Li Y, Wang G, Xia J, Zhao XA, Huang R, Lu S, Wu C. Use of ELISpot assay to study HBs-specific B cell responses in vaccinated and HBV infected humans. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2018; **7**: 16 [PMID: 29449582 DOI: 10.1038/s41426-018-0034-0]

91 **Loggi E**, Gamal N, Bihl F, Bernardi M, Andreone P. Adaptive response in hepatitis B virus infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 305-313 [PMID: 24674098 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12255]

92 **Burton AR**, Pallett LJ, McCoy LE, Suveizdyte K, Amin OE, Swadling L, Alberts E, Davidson BR, Kennedy PT, Gill US, Mauri C, Blair PA, Pelletier N, Maini MK. Circulating and intrahepatic antiviral B cells are defective in hepatitis B. *J Clin Invest* 2018; **128**: 4588-4603 [PMID: 30091725 DOI: 10.1172/JCI121960]

93 **Poonia B**, Ayithan N, Nandi M, Masur H, Kottilil S. HBV induces inhibitory FcRL receptor on B cells and dysregulates B cell-T follicular helper cell axis. *Sci Rep* 2018; **8**: 15296 [PMID: 30333570 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-018-33719-x]

94 **Xing T**, Xu H, Yu W. Role of T follicular helper cells and their associated molecules in the pathogenesis of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Exp Ther Med* 2013; **5**: 885-889 [PMID: 23407366 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2012.864]

95 **Lu B**, Zhang B, Wang L, Ma C, Liu X, Zhao Y, Jiao Y. Hepatitis B Virus e Antigen Regulates Monocyte Function and Promotes B Lymphocyte Activation. *Viral Immunol* 2017; **30**: 35-44 [PMID: 27976981 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2016.0113]

96 **Shen P**, Fillatreau S. Antibody-independent functions of B cells: a focus on cytokines. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2015; **15**: 441-451 [PMID: 26065586 DOI: 10.1038/nri3857]

97 **Bouezzedine F**, Fardel O, Gripon P. Interleukin 6 inhibits HBV entry through NTCP down regulation. *Virology* 2015; **481**: 34-42 [PMID: 25765005 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2015.02.026]

98 **Boni C**, Barili V, Acerbi G, Rossi M, Vecchi A, Laccabue D, Penna A, Missale G, Ferrari C, Fisicaro P. HBV Immune-Therapy: From Molecular Mechanisms to Clinical Applications. *Int J Mol Sci* 2019; **20** [PMID: 31195619 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20112754]

99 **Devi U**, Locarnini S. Hepatitis B antivirals and resistance. *Curr Opin Virol* 2013; **3**: 495-500 [PMID: 24016777 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2013.08.006]

100 **Gao Y**, Zhang TY, Yuan Q, Xia NS. Antibody-mediated immunotherapy against chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2017; **13**: 1768-1773 [PMID: 28521640 DOI: 10.1080/21645515.2017.1319021]

101 **Bazinet M**, Pântea V, Cebotarescu V, Cojuhari L, Jimbei P, Albrecht J, Schmid P, Le Gal F, Gordien E, Krawczyk A, Mijočević H, Karimzadeh H, Roggendorf M, Vaillant A. Safety and efficacy of REP 2139 and pegylated interferon alfa-2a for treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis B virus and hepatitis D virus co-infection (REP 301 and REP 301-LTF): a non-randomised, open-label, phase 2 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **2**: 877-889 [PMID: 28964701 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(17)30288-1]

102 **Roehl I**, Seiffert S, Brikh C, Quinet J, Jamard C, Dorfler N, Lockridge JA, Cova L, Vaillant A. Nucleic Acid Polymers with Accelerated Plasma and Tissue Clearance for Chronic Hepatitis B Therapy. *Mol Ther Nucleic Acids* 2017; **8**: 1-12 [PMID: 28918011 DOI: 10.1016/j.omtn.2017.04.019]

103 **Han X**, Zhou C, Jiang M, Wang Y, Wang J, Cheng Z, Wang M, Liu Y, Liang C, Wang Z, Weikert R, Lv W, Xie J, Yu X, Zhou X, Luangsay S, Shen HC, Mayweg AV, Javanbakht H, Yang S. Discovery of RG7834: The First-in-Class Selective and Orally Available Small Molecule Hepatitis B Virus Expression Inhibitor with Novel Mechanism of Action. *J Med Chem* 2018; **61**: 10619-10634 [PMID: 30286292 DOI: 10.1021/acs.jmedchem.8b01245]

104 **Zhao H**, Wang H, Hu Y, Xu D, Yin C, Han Q, Zhang J. Chitosan Nanovaccines as Efficient Carrier Adjuvant System for IL-12 with Enhanced Protection Against HBV. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2021; **16**: 4913-4928 [PMID: 34321879 DOI:

10.2147/IJN.S317113]

105 **Wang X**, Dong A, Xiao J, Zhou X, Mi H, Xu H, Zhang J, Wang B. Overcoming HBV immune tolerance to eliminate HBsAg-positive hepatocytes *via* pre-administration of GM-CSF as a novel adjuvant for a hepatitis B vaccine in HBV transgenic mice. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2016; **13**: 850-861 [PMID: 26166767 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2015.64]

106 **Shen Z**, Yang H, Yang S, Wang W, Cui X, Zhou X, Liu W, Pan S, Liu Y, Zhang J, Xie Y, Liu J. Hepatitis B virus persistence in mice reveals IL-21 and IL-33 as regulators of viral clearance. *Nat Commun* 2017; **8**: 2119 [PMID: 29242561 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-017-02304-7]

107 **Korolowicz KE**, Iyer RP, Czerwinski S, Suresh M, Yang J, Padmanabhan S, Sheri A, Pandey RK, Skell J, Marquis JK, Kallakury BV, Tucker RD, Menne S. Antiviral Efficacy and Host Innate Immunity Associated with SB 9200 Treatment in the Woodchuck Model of Chronic Hepatitis B. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0161313 [PMID: 27552102 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0161313]

108 **Luk A**, Jiang Q, Glavini K, Triyatni M, Zhao N, Racek T, Zhu Y, Grippo JF. A Single and Multiple Ascending Dose Study of Toll-Like Receptor 7 Agonist (RO7020531) in Chinese Healthy Volunteers. *Clin Transl Sci* 2020; **13**: 985-993 [PMID: 32268000 DOI: 10.1111/cts.12791]

109 **Jo J**, Tan AT, Ussher JE, Sandalova E, Tang XZ, Tan-Garcia A, To N, Hong M, Chia A, Gill US, Kennedy PT, Tan KC, Lee KH, De Libero G, Gehring AJ, Willberg CB, Klenerman P, Bertoletti A. Toll-like receptor 8 agonist and bacteria trigger potent activation of innate immune cells in human liver. *PLoS Pathog* 2014; **10**: e1004210 [PMID: 24967632 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004210]

110 **Suresh M**, Korolowicz KE, Balarezo M, Iyer RP, Padmanabhan S, Cleary D, Gimi R, Sheri A, Yon C, Kallakury BV, Tucker RD, Afdhal N, Menne S. Antiviral Efficacy and Host Immune Response Induction during Sequential Treatment with SB 9200 Followed by Entecavir in Woodchucks. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0169631 [PMID: 28056062 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0169631]

111 **Han Q**, Hou Z, Yin C, Zhang C, Zhang J. 5'-triphosphate siRNA targeting HBx elicits a potent anti-HBV immune response in pAAV-HBV transfected mice. *Antiviral Res* 2019; **161**: 36-45 [PMID: 30448255 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2018.11.006]

112 **Li F**, Wei H, Gao Y, Xu L, Yin W, Sun R, Tian Z. Blocking the natural killer cell inhibitory receptor NKG2A increases activity of human natural killer cells and clears hepatitis B virus infection in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 392-401 [PMID: 23103614 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.10.039]

113 **Sun C**, Lan P, Han Q, Huang M, Zhang Z, Xu G, Song J, Wang J, Wei H, Zhang J, Sun R, Zhang C, Tian Z. Oncofetal gene SALL4 reactivation by hepatitis B virus counteracts miR-200c in PD-L1-induced T cell exhaustion. *Nat Commun* 2018; **9**: 1241 [PMID: 29593314 DOI: 10.1038/s41467-018-03584-3]

114 **Festag MM**, Festag J, Fräßle SP, Asen T, Sacherl J, Schreiber S, Mück-Häusl MA, Busch DH, Wisskirchen K, Protzer U. Evaluation of a Fully Human, Hepatitis B Virus-Specific Chimeric Antigen Receptor in an Immunocompetent Mouse Model. *Mol Ther* 2019; **27**: 947-959 [PMID: 30852138 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2019.02.001]

115 **Qasim W**, Brunetto M, Gehring AJ, Xue SA, Schurich A, Khakpoor A, Zhan H, Ciccorossi P, Gilmour K, Cavallone D, Moriconi F, Farzhenah F, Mazzoni A, Chan L, Morris E, Thrasher A, Maini MK, Bonino F, Stauss H, Bertoletti A. Immunotherapy of HCC metastases with autologous T cell receptor redirected T cells, targeting HBsAg in a liver transplant patient. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: 486-491 [PMID: 25308176 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.10.001]

116 **Krebs K**, Böttinger N, Huang LR, Chmielewski M, Arzberger S, Gasteiger G, Jäger C, Schmitt E, Bohne F, Aichler M, Uckert W, Abken H, Heikenwalder M, Knolle P, Protzer U. T cells expressing a chimeric antigen receptor that binds hepatitis B virus envelope proteins control virus replication in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 456-465 [PMID: 23639914 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.04.047]

117 **Kruse RL**, Shum T, Tashiro H, Barzi M, Yi Z, Whitten-Bauer C, Legras X, Bissig-Choisat B, Garaigorta U, Gottschalk S, Bissig KD. HBsAg-redirected T cells exhibit antiviral activity in HBV-infected human liver chimeric mice. *Cytotherapy* 2018; **20**: 697-705 [PMID: 29631939 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcyt.2018.02.002]

118 **Kah J**, Koh S, Volz T, Ceccarello E, Allweiss L, Lütgehetmann M, Bertoletti A, Dandri M. Lymphocytes transiently expressing virus-specific T cell receptors reduce hepatitis B virus infection. *J Clin Invest* 2017; **127**: 3177-3188 [PMID: 28737510 DOI: 10.1172/JCI93024]

119 **Otano I**, Escors D, Schurich A, Singh H, Robertson F, Davidson BR, Fusai G, Vargas FA, Tan ZMD, Aw JYJ, Hansi N, Kennedy PTF, Xue SA, Stauss HJ, Bertoletti A, Pavesi A, Maini MK. Molecular Recalibration of PD-1+ Antigen-Specific T Cells from Blood and Liver. *Mol Ther* 2018; **26**: 2553-2566 [PMID: 30217730 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2018.08.013]

120 **Lynn RC**, Weber EW, Sotillo E, Gennert D, Xu P, Good Z, Anbunathan H, Lattin J, Jones R, Tieu V, Nagaraja S, Granja J, de Bourcy CFA, Majzner R, Satpathy AT, Quake SR, Monje M, Chang HY, Mackall CL. c-Jun overexpression in CAR T cells induces exhaustion resistance. *Nature* 2019; **576**: 293-300 [PMID: 31802004 DOI: 10.1038/s41586-019-1805-z]

121 **Kosinska AD**, Bauer T, Protzer U. Therapeutic vaccination for chronic hepatitis B. *Curr Opin Virol* 2017; **23**: 75-81 [PMID: 28453967 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2017.03.011]

122 **Wang H**, Han Q, Zhao H, Xu D, Zhang J. Single dose HBsAg CS-γ-PGA nanogels induce potent protective immune responses against HBV infection. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2018; **124**: 82-88 [PMID: 29247691 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2017.12.003]

123 **Wang W**, Zhou X, Bian Y, Wang S, Chai Q, Guo Z, Wang Z, Zhu P, Peng H, Yan X, Li W, Fu YX, Zhu M. Dual-targeting nanoparticle vaccine elicits a therapeutic antibody response against chronic hepatitis B. *Nat Nanotechnol* 2020; **15**: 406-416 [PMID: 32123380 DOI: 10.1038/s41565-020-0648-y]

124 **Zhao HJ**, Han QJ, Wang G, Lin A, Xu DQ, Wang YQ, Zhao LH, Tian ZG, Zhang J. Poly I:C-based rHBVvac therapeutic vaccine eliminates HBV *via* generation of HBV-specific $CD8^+$ effector memory T cells. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 2032-2043 [PMID: 30635406 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-315588]

125 **Zoulim F**, Fournier C, Habersetzer F, Sprinzl M, Pol S, Coffin CS, Leroy V, Ma M, Wedemeyer H, Lohse AW, Thimme R, Lugardon K, Martin P, Bastien B, Sansas B, Adda N, Halluard C, Bendjama K, Brandely M, Inchauspé G. Safety and immunogenicity of the therapeutic vaccine TG1050 in chronic hepatitis B patients: a phase 1b placebo-controlled trial. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2020; **16**: 388-399 [PMID: 31373537 DOI: 10.1080/21645515.2019.1651141]

126 **Zhou C**, Li C, Gong GZ, Wang S, Zhang JM, Xu DZ, Guo LM, Ren H, Xu M, Xie Q, Pan C, Xu J, Hu Z, Geng S, Zhou X, Wang X, Mi H, Zhao G, Yu W, Wen YM, Huang L, Wang XY, Wang B. Analysis of immunological mechanisms exerted by HBsAg-HBIG therapeutic vaccine combined with Adefovir in chronic hepatitis B patients. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2017; **13**: 1989-1996 [PMID: 28665747 DOI: 10.1080/21645515.2017.1335840]

127 **Al Mahtab M**, Akbar SMF, Aguilar JC, Guillen G, Penton E, Tuero A, Yoshida O, Hiasa Y, Onji M. Treatment of chronic hepatitis B naïve patients with a therapeutic vaccine containing HBs and HBc antigens (a randomized, open and treatment controlled phase III clinical trial). *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0201236 [PMID: 30133478 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0201236]

128 **Gaggar A**, Coeshott C, Apelian D, Rodell T, Armstrong BR, Shen G, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG. Safety, tolerability and immunogenicity of GS-4774, a hepatitis B virus-specific therapeutic vaccine, in healthy subjects: a randomized study. *Vaccine* 2014; **32**: 4925-4931 [PMID: 25045824 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.07.027]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 897-908

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.897

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Dualistic role of platelets in living donor liver transplantation: Are they harmful?

Chen Liang, Kazuhiro Takahashi, Kinji Furuya, Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, Tatsuya Oda

Specialty type: Transplantation

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Sahin TT

Received: May 19, 2021
Peer-review started: May 19, 2021
First decision: June 24, 2021
Revised: July 4, 2021
Accepted: January 27, 2022
Article in press: January 27, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Chen Liang, Kazuhiro Takahashi, Kinji Furuya, Nobuhiro Ohkohchi, Tatsuya Oda, Gastrointestinal and Hepatobiliary-Pancreatic Surgery, University of Tsukuba, Tsukuba 3058575, Ibaraki, Japan

Corresponding author: Kazuhiro Takahashi, MD, PhD, Assistant Professor, Surgeon, Gastrointestinal and Hepatobiliary-Pancreatic Surgery, University of Tsukuba, Tennodai 1-1-1, Tsukuba 3058575, Ibaraki, Japan. kazu1123@md.tsukuba.ac.jp

Abstract

Platelets are anucleate fragments mainly involved in hemostasis and thrombosis, and there is emerging evidence that platelets have other nonhemostatic potentials in inflammation, angiogenesis, regeneration and ischemia/reperfusion injury (I/R injury), which are involved in the physiological and pathological processes during living donor liver transplantation (LDLT). LDLT is sometimes associated with impaired regeneration and severe I/R injury, leading to postoperative complications and decreased patient survival. Recent studies have suggested that perioperative thrombocytopenia is associated with poor graft regeneration and postoperative morbidity in the short and long term after LDLT. Although it is not fully understood whether thrombocytopenia is the cause or result, increasing platelet counts are frequently suggested to improve posttransplant outcomes in clinical studies. Based on rodent experiments, previous studies have identified that platelets stimulate liver regeneration after partial hepatectomy. However, the role of platelets in LDLT is controversial, as platelets are supposed to aggravate I/R injury in the liver. Recently, a rat model of partial liver transplantation (LT) was used to demonstrate that thrombopoietin-induced thrombocytosis prior to surgery accelerated graft regeneration and improved the survival rate after transplantation. It was clarified that platelet-derived liver regeneration outweighed the associated risk of I/R injury after partial LT. Clinical strategies to increase perioperative platelet counts, such as thrombopoietin, thrombopoietin receptor agonist and platelet transfusion, may improve graft regeneration and survival after LDLT.

Key Words: Platelet; Liver transplantation; Regeneration; Ischemia/reperfusion injury; Kupffer cell; Oxidative stress

Core Tip: Perioperative thrombocytopenia is considered to be associated with poor graft regeneration and postoperative morbidity in the short and long term after living donor liver transplantation (LDLT). This review presented recent evidence for the role of platelets in LDLT based on clinical and basic studies. Platelets have both beneficial and detrimental effects on liver grafts, with a generally positive role in liver regeneration and a potentially negative role in ischemia/reperfusion injury. As increasing perioperative platelet counts are suggested to improve graft regeneration and survival, "platelet therapy" may provide prophylactic or therapeutic strategies to enhance the beneficial effects of LDLT.

Citation: Liang C, Takahashi K, Furuya K, Ohkohchi N, Oda T. Dualistic role of platelets in living donor liver transplantation: Are they harmful? *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 897-908
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/897.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.897

INTRODUCTION

Living donor liver transplantation (LDLT) has been developed as an important option for patients with end-stage liver disease, particularly in the virtual absence of deceased donors. During LDLT, changes in the platelet count and platelet function may occur, and these alterations may lead to deterioration of hemostatic function[1]. Transient thrombocytopenia has been considered as a common phenomenon after LDLT[2]. It is characterized by an average reduction of 60% in platelet counts on postoperative day (POD) 3 and recovers to normal levels on POD 10 after LDLT[3]. The reduction in platelet number can be caused by hemodilution, immunologic reactions, decreased platelet production, or sequestration of platelets in the liver graft upon reperfusion[1]. Moreover, platelet function declines during LDLT, as it was demonstrated that a large number of degranulated platelets were detected in the sinusoids of the liver graft after reperfusion[4].

Recent studies have suggested that postoperative thrombocytopenia is not simply an academic observation but is associated with catastrophic events, such as postoperative bleeding, cerebral hemorrhage and infection, which eventually lead to poor graft regeneration, increased postoperative morbidity and decreased patient survival in the short and long term after LDLT[5]. However, the precise mechanism is unknown, and it is unclear whether increasing perioperative platelet counts could improve posttransplant outcomes. The aim of this article is to summarize and discuss the clinical and experimental evidence of the role of platelets in LDLT. We also referred to the potential beneficial and detrimental effects of "platelet therapy" in the form of thrombopoietin (TPO) receptor agonists that augment graft regeneration.

PLATELETS

Platelets are anucleate fragments of cytoplasm derived from megakaryocytes in the bone marrow[6]. The average life span of circulating platelets is approximately 9 d, and they are destroyed by phagocytosis in the spleen and liver[7]. The main function of platelets is to react to hemorrhage by clumping and initiating blood clots[8], which are regulated and kept in balance in hemostasis. However, multiple changes occur in patients with chronic liver disease and post transplantation (LT) conditions, including changes in prohemostatic and antihemostatic pathways, which may consequently lead to either bleeding diatheses or thrombotic disorders[9]. Clinical approaches to increase platelet levels are necessary to compensate for the increased blood loss and requirements for platelets. However, due to the fear of thrombosis and transfusion-related injury[5], the safety and strategies of increasing perioperative platelet counts are still under debate.

Apart from the well-known role of platelets in hemostasis, there is emerging evidence that platelets have other functions in inflammation, angiogenesis, immune response, wound healing, regeneration, and ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) injury[10-12]. Platelets contain three types of secretory granules: alpha granules, dense granules, and lysosomal granules. Each granule contains physiological substances such as platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), serotonin, epidermal growth factor (EGF), and transforming growth factor-β[13-16]. When platelets are activated in specific situations, these biologically active substances are released and may induce nonhemostatic processes. All these physiological or pathological processes are involved in the alterations that occur in patients undergoing LDLT.

LDLT

LT is one of the most definitive choices for patients with end-stage liver disease and acute liver failure, and LDLT has been recognized as an important option for patients, particularly small pediatric patients and adults who are disadvantaged by the current deceased donor allocation system[17,18]. The feasibility of LDLT is based on the regenerative capacity of the liver, the evolution of surgical techniques in splitting the liver, and the widespread shortage of deceased liver grafts. In the LDLT procedure, a part of the healthy liver is surgically resected from a living person and transplanted to a recipient immediately after the recipient's diseased liver is removed[18]. After LDLT, the liver graft undergoes two different processes, namely, liver regeneration and I/R injury[18]. In liver regeneration, the remnant partial liver graft has to rapidly grow to meet the demands of the recipient's reduced metabolic and synthetic capacities[19]. At the same time, reactive oxygen species (ROS) and inflammatory factors are generated, leading to various responses related to I/R injury[20].

LDLT is sometimes associated with impaired regeneration and severe I/R injury in the liver graft, resulting in small-for-size syndrome (SFSS). SFSS is usually induced by size mismatching between donors and recipients and is characterized by synthetic dysfunction, elevated aminotransferases, and prolonged cholestasis[21]. The increased transaminitis and cholestasis may be attenuated with supportive care and time after LDLT, but sometimes irreversible damage, such as hypoglycemia, cholestasis, encephalopathy, renal failure and acidosis, may occur, which could be critical for recipients [21]. Thus, strategies to improve graft conditions are essential in clinical practice.

LIVER REGENERATION

Liver regeneration is mainly mediated by the proliferation of hepatocytes. In addition, nonparenchymal cells such as Kupffer cells (KCs), liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs), and hepatic stellate cells contribute to liver growth *via* their own proliferation and proliferation-stimulatory effects on hepatocytes[22]. Proliferation is generated when normally quiescent parenchymal cells and nonparenchymal cells undergo one or two rounds of replication to restore liver mass by a process of compensatory hyperplasia[23]. Liver regeneration is usually induced under two conditions: trauma or surgical resection-induced tissue loss and toxins or virus-induced hepatocellular death[24]. Hepatic progenitor cells are liver stem cells with differentiation capacities that can be activated during hepatic stress or injury. According to the participation of hepatic progenitor cells, the origin of the cells compensating for liver mass could be different. The regenerative process after tissue loss is usually driven by some of the existing cells in the liver without activating the progenitor cell compartments. In contrast, when acute liver failure is induced by some toxins, such as galactosamine, intrahepatic progenitor cells can replicate and differentiate into different cell types, such as cholangiocytes, hepatocytes and epithelial cells, to compensate for impaired liver functions[25].

Due to the central role of the liver in body homeostasis, intensive research was conducted to identify factors that might contribute to hepatic growth and regeneration. The essential circuitry required for liver regeneration encompasses three types of pathways, namely, cytokine, growth factor, and metabolic pathways that link liver function with cell growth and proliferation. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin-6 (IL-6) are important cytokines involved in liver regeneration, as it was reported that both liver mRNA and serum levels of TNF-α and IL-6 stimulated liver regeneration after hepatectomy [26]. The elevations in TNF-α and IL-6 lead to the activation of the transcription factors nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) and signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3), which consequently increase the expression levels of cyclin D1 and trigger cellular proliferation[27]. In addition, growth factors, such as HGF, EGF, IGF-1 and PDGF, play essential roles in driving cell cycle progression during liver regeneration[28]. With the release of growth factors, numerous intracellular signaling pathways are activated to regulate liver regeneration.

LIVER I/R INJURY

I/R injury is tissue damage induced when the blood supply returns to tissue after a period of ischemia or hypoxia. It is an important cause of liver damage during hepatectomy and LT, which consequently induces graft dysfunction after surgery[29]. During the ischemic period, the absence of oxygen creates a condition in which inflammation and oxidative damage accumulate in the tissue under oxidative stress, which results in deregulation of the phenotype of all liver cellular components[29].

LSECs, which are essential in controlling vascular homeostasis and toxicant clearance, are especially vulnerable to I/R injury[30]. It was described that I/R injury could induce membrane discontinuation, vacuolization, and cell shape rounding in LSECs[31]. Concomitant with the deregulation of LSECs, the lack of oxygen and energy during the ischemic period produces edema in KCs, and biomolecules, such as damage-associated molecular patterns or pathogen-associated molecular patterns, can be released by neighboring hepatic cells to activate KCs[32]. Activated KCs can initiate the inflammatory response by

releasing ROS and proinflammatory cytokines, including TNF-α, interleukin-1, interferon-c and interleukin-12[33].

I/R injury is associated with two forms of cell death, namely, apoptosis and necroptosis. Apoptosis is a form of programmed cell death that is characterized by a series of cellular alterations, such as DNA breaks, plasma membrane blebbing, cell shrinkage and chromatin condensation[34]. Most of the biochemical and morphological changes in cells are mediated by a subset of the caspase family. Necroptosis, which is a programmed form of necrosis, occurs from extracellular signals or intracellular cues and involves the process of cellular swelling, plasma membrane rupture, and the release of proinflammatory molecules[35]. In the process of apoptosis, TNF-α leads to the activation of initiator caspases such as caspase-8 and caspase-10. These caspases cleave and activate downstream effector caspases, including caspase-3 and caspase-7, which promote the release of pro-apoptotic molecules to execute apoptosis[34]. Necroptosis is also typically driven in response to the engagement of TNF-α. Activation of the TNF receptor facilitates receptor-interacting protein kinase (RIPK) 1 to assemble with RIPK3 and concomitantly phosphorylates mixed lineage kinase domain-like (MLKL), which is a crucial downstream effector protein of necroptosis. The phosphorylation of MLKL induces plasma membrane permeabilization and the release of cell damage-associated molecular patterns, which results in cell destruction[36]. Overall, TNF-α serves as a central regulator in the process of apoptosis and necroptosis during hepatic I/R injury.

EVIDENCE FROM CLINICAL STUDIES

Platelets and partial hepatectomy

Hepatectomy is the surgical resection of the liver mainly performed for the treatment of primary or metastatic hepatic malignancies. This technique is conducted based on the regeneration capacity of the liver. Although surgical techniques and perioperative management have been substantially improved in recent years, partial hepatectomy is still associated with a high postoperative mortality rate of 1% to 5% [37]. Perioperative thrombocytopenia has been recognized as a common phenomenon during liver resection. It was reported that platelet counts drop immediately after surgery with a nadir on POD 2–3 and return to normal levels by POD 14[38]. The potential reasons concerning preoperative thrombocytopenia may be decreased platelet production, hemodilution, splenic sequestration, medications, or infections[2], but the precise mechanism remains unclear.

Recently, the association of the perioperative platelet count with posthepatectomy liver failure and mortality has been investigated. By conducting retrospective studies, several researchers stated that a low postoperative platelet count was associated with poor recovery and worse outcomes after liver surgery[37,39]. Takahashi *et al*[40] reported that a greater than 40% decrease in the platelet count was an independent risk factor for delayed liver function recovery after partial hepatectomy. They observed that the platelet count in the delayed recovery group returned to preoperative levels significantly later than that in the adequate recovery group, which indicated that the extra platelets were consumed to compensate for the delayed recovery, resulting in delayed restoration of the platelet counts in the delayed recovery group[40]. In addition, several other parameters regarding perioperative platelet counts, such as the platelet-to-lymphocyte ratio, alkaline phosphatase-to-platelet ratio index, aspartate aminotransferase to platelet count ratio index, and fibrosis-4 index, were reported to be effective criteria for predicting poor surgical outcomes after partial hepatectomy[5]. Although the underlying mechanisms are not fully understood, these reports indicated that increasing the perioperative platelet count may improve the outcomes after partial hepatectomy.

Platelets and deceased donor liver transplantation

The total number of deceased donor liver transplantation (DDLT) has dramatically increased with innovations in both immune suppression and surgical techniques. Posttransplant thrombocytopenia has been recognized as a common phenomenon since the prevalence of DDLT began to increase[1]. In 1968, it was first reported that an acute drop in platelet count to less than 10×10^3/μL was observed on POD 3 in some patients undergoing DDLT[1]. By using ^{111}In-labeled platelets, researchers found that transplant recipients had a delayed recovery of platelet counts after DDLT[41]. Subsequent studies have demonstrated that retransplantation, low preoperative platelet counts, massive intraoperative platelet transfusions, and poor general preoperative conditions were factors associated with posttransplant thrombocytopenia[42]. However, they did not pay attention to the meaning of posttransplant thrombocytopenia in DDLT.

The first report clarifying the relationship between thrombocytopenia and DDLT was presented in 1992, when McCaughan *et al*[43] conducted an analysis of a large cohort of 541 DDLT patients and identified that the decreased counts after DDLT were an independent risk factor for graft survival. Since then, several consecutive studies have been reported to demonstrate perioperative thrombocytopenia as a negative factor for grafts and patient survival in the short and long term after DDLT[42,44,45]. In 2014, Lesurtel *et al*[9] suggested the 60-5 criteria in which a platelet count of $< 60 \times 10^3$/μL on POD 5 was an independent risk factor associated with severe postoperative complications, early graft failure, and

patient mortality in the short term after DDLT.

Although clinical studies have identified that postoperative thrombocytopenia deteriorates graft and patient survival after DDLT[9], thrombocytosis has not been proven to be a positive factor for DDLT. Some studies stated that a higher preoperative platelet count was associated with I/R injury and arterial thrombosis in DDLT[46,47]. As a result, it is difficult to perform prospective trials by increasing perioperative platelet counts.

Platelets and LDLT

LDLT is different from DDLT in that the partial liver graft needs to regenerate under the condition of I/R injury[18]. Transient thrombocytopenia has been regarded as an independent risk factor for LDLT. Several separate authors stated that a low postoperative count had a higher chance of developing early allograft dysfunction and was a strong predictor of postoperative complications in recipients undergoing LDLT[3,48]. It was demonstrated that an immediate posttransplant platelet count of < 68 × 10^3/μL or a platelet count of < 30 × 10^3/μL on POD 3 was an independent risk factor for major postoperative complications and was associated with early graft dysfunctions[3,48]. Takahashi *et al*[19] reported that a platelet count of < 60 × 10^3/μL on POD 5 was independently associated with the incidence of postoperative morbidity in the mid-term after LDLT and was especially related to small-for-size syndrome such as ascites and infection.

Increasing perioperative platelet counts has been considered to be positively associated with LDLT. Kim *et al*[49] performed a retrospective study in a population of 87 recipients with LDLT and reported that the number of platelets transfused was significantly associated with graft regeneration. Moreover, some consecutive studies were conducted to provide further evidence regarding the benefits and risks of platelet transfusion. They described that platelet transfusion enhanced graft regeneration in recipients after LDLT without increasing morbidity and mortality rates[50,51].

Living donor hepatectomy is sometimes associated with postoperative complications, leading to posthepatecomy liver failure. Previous studies reported that the morbidity rates in liver donors ranged from 8.3% to 78.3%[52,53]. The remnant liver volume ratio, which was recommended to exceed the minimum of 30% to 35% for donor safety[54], is closely related to postoperative morbidity such as liver failure, and platelets have been highlighted as playing an important role in this condition. Yoshino *et al*[55] retrospectively collected data from 254 donors undergoing LDLT and showed that a lower preoperative platelet count was an independent risk factor for postoperative complications, such as bile leakage, subphrenic effusion, infectious ascites, postoperative anemia, and liver failure, after living donor hepatectomy. Emond *et al*[56] demonstrated that even in healthy donors, the fluctuation of platelet count within the normal range was negatively associated with potential portal hypertension and subclinical liver dysfunction, indicating that platelet count might serve as a surrogate marker to predict potential liver failure in healthy donors.

Although postoperative thrombocytopenia after LDLT was associated with low graft regeneration, it is unclear whether postoperative thrombocytopenia is the "cause" of low graft regeneration or just a "result" that appears as an unfavored postoperative condition of the patients. As posttransplant thrombocytopenia was reported to be associated with LDLT, clinical studies concerning this field are necessary. However, due to the fear of thrombosis and other complications, strategies to increase platelet counts are difficult to implement in clinical practice. Thus, basic studies explaining the precise mechanism of platelets in liver regeneration, I/R injury and LT are warranted.

EVIDENCE FROM BASIC STUDIES

The role of platelets in liver regeneration

Platelets are considered to stimulate liver regeneration, as they can secrete physiological substances such as IGF-1 and HGF[57], which play important roles during liver regeneration[22]. In addition, platelet-derived serotonin was demonstrated to be an inducer of liver regeneration, as it was reported that the liver failed to regenerate after partial hepatectomy in mice lacking intraplatelet serotonin[11]. Previous studies revealed that platelets accumulated in the liver after hepatectomy with a 2-fold increase compared with prehepatectomy levels[58], and electron microscopy showed that platelets translocated from the sinusoidal space into the space of Disse and directly contacted hepatocytes[59]. It was shown that marked changes in proliferation-related signaling pathways and mitosis occurred after changing the platelet levels in mice after hepatectomy[59]. These results suggest that platelets accumulate in the liver after hepatectomy and may provide signals for rapid hepatocyte proliferation.

It was suggested that direct contact between platelets and hepatocytes contributed to liver regeneration. When recruited in the liver, platelets translocate from the liver sinusoids to the space of Disse and trigger the release of soluble mediators from platelets such as HGF, IGF-1, serotonin and VEGF, which leads to hepatocyte proliferation[60]. LSECs and KCs were also reported to interact with platelets to stimulate liver regeneration. It was identified that platelets induced the release of IL-6 from LSECs through direct contact with LSECs[61]. On the other hand, platelets could attach to KCs, and the hepatic expression of TNF-α and IL-6, which are predominantly produced by KCs, increased in response

to the interaction between platelets and KCs[62]. Due to the secretion and stimulation capacities of platelets, researchers found that the TNF-α/NF-κB, IL-6/STAT3, and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt pathways are the three major cascades in which platelets exert their effects during the process of liver regeneration[62]. The pathways are associated with the transition of quiescent hepatocytes to the cell cycle and progression beyond the restriction point in G1 phase of the cycle[22], which finally stimulates hepatocyte proliferation.

In addition, platelet-derived messenger RNA was considered to have an impact on liver regeneration. By coculturing platelets with hepatocytes, it was found that platelets accumulated in the perinuclear region of hepatocytes, and messenger RNA from platelets was transferred throughout the hepatocyte cytoskeleton[63]. This result suggested that platelets were internalized into hepatocytes and transferred proliferation-related messenger RNA and stimulated hepatocyte proliferation[63].

Overall, basic studies have identified that platelet-derived liver regeneration occurs through four different mechanisms: (1) direct effects on hepatocytes; (2) cooperative effects with LSECs; (3) collaborative effects with KCs; and (4) the transfer of messenger RNA to hepatocytes (Figure 1).

The role of platelets in I/R injury

There is emerging evidence that platelets have pathological functions in hepatic I/R injury. Cywes *et al* [12] used a reperfusion model to study the contribution of platelets to I/R injury. They isolated the rat liver and perfused the liver *ex vivo* with Krebs-Henseleit solution containing platelets. They speculated that the degree of platelet adherence to LSECs was related to hepatic injury in perfused rat livers[12], and the number of apoptotic LSECs increased by 6-fold in isolated liver perfused with platelets. These reports indicated that platelets are directly responsible for hepatic injury and contribute to the development of apoptosis in LSECs after reperfusion. Adhesion molecules such as selectins and integrins, which are expressed on platelets and LSECs, are thought to mediate the interaction between platelets and LSECs and result in liver damage[10].

KCs are considered to act in synergy with platelets in the mechanism of I/R injury, as activated KCs release a large amount of both proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory mediators, such as TNF-α, IL-6, interleukin-10 and interleukin-13, which aggravate liver injury[64]. Electron microscopy showed platelets attached to KCs in the early period after hepatic ischemia[65]. It was demonstrated that platelet-related I/R injury after hepatic reperfusion was mainly characterized by the activation of KCs, which potentially release proinflammatory cytokines and generate ROS[66].

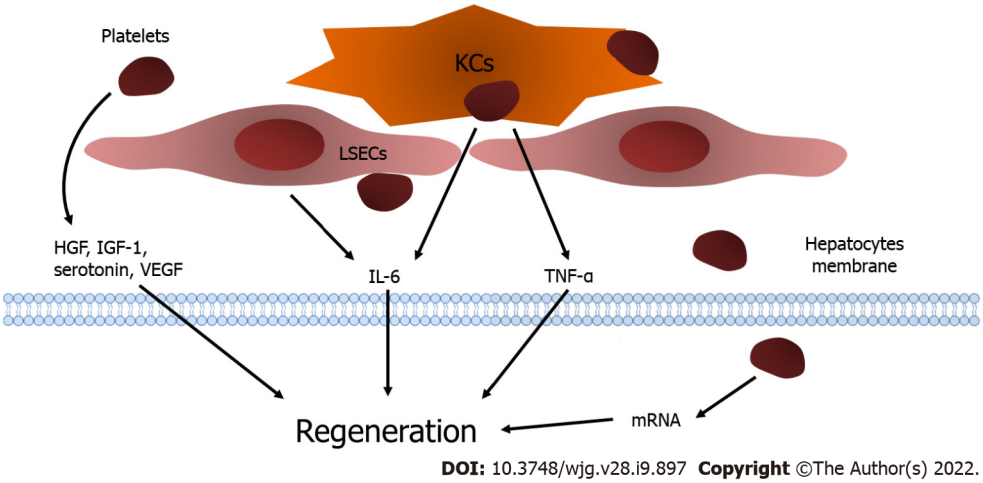
ROS, which contribute to inflammatory responses in I/R injury[67], are pivotally related to platelets. First, oxidases or proinflammatory molecules located in platelets are able to produce ROS[68]. Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase is considered to be the most relevant source of ROS in platelets. Patients with a hereditary deficiency of NADPH oxidase had an almost complete loss of platelet-related ROS products[69]. Xanthine oxidase is another potential source of ROS[70], but its precise relationship with platelet physiology is still unclear. In addition, platelet proinflammatory molecules, such as P-selectin and CD40 ligand, are demonstrated to be associated with intraplatelet ROS generation[71]. Second, ROS formation is functionally associated with platelet activation. It has been reported that catalase, which can reduce the cytosolic concentration of hydrogen peroxide, inhibits platelet aggregation[72]. Moreover, the inhibition of NADPH oxidase by chemical inhibitors, such as diphenyleneiodonium and apocynin, was observed to be related to the suppression of platelet activation [73].

In contrast, platelets have been demonstrated to indirectly inhibit I/R injury. Oberkofler *et al*[74] reported that the platelet-serotonin-VEGF-interleukin 10/matrix metalloproteinase 8 axis mediated the protective effects of preconditioning on I/R injury in mice. Additionally, it was reported that inducible nitric oxide synthase, an aggravating enzyme for I/R injury[75], was inhibited in macrophages after coculture with platelets under lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammatory conditions[76].

Although the role of platelets in hepatic I/R injury is controversial, it is supposed that platelets could directly aggravate hepatic I/R injury in three ways: (1) adhesion to LSECs; (2) cooperative effects with KCs; and (3) platelet-derived ROS formation (Figure 2).

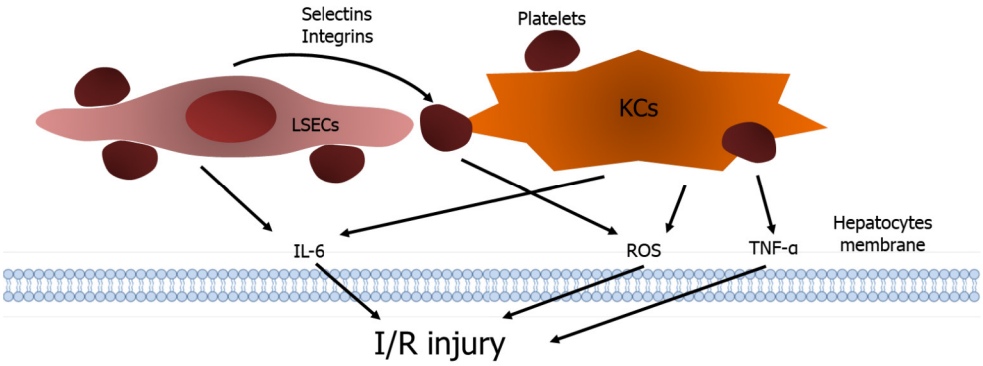
The role of platelets in partial LT

Platelets are suggested to be positively associated with LDLT in that partial liver grafts require postoperative liver regeneration under I/R injury[77]. This is compatible with previous studies that proved that platelets stimulate liver regeneration after hepatectomy in animal models[59]. Although the positive role of higher perioperative platelet counts has been suggested, the precise mechanisms clarifying how platelets interact with other cells under I/R conditions were reported recently. Liang *et al* [61] reported that TPO-induced preoperative thrombocytosis contributed to a better outcome in a rat model of partial LT. In this study, platelets stimulated liver regeneration after partial LT *via* several proliferation-related cytokines and pathways. I/R injury was not aggravated, as shown by unchanged levels of aggravating parameters such as ROS, apoptosis or necrosis. They further used a critical model of 20% partial LT and identified that thrombocytosis could prolong the survival rate in rats. This research explained that thrombocytopenia is not a "result" but a "cause" of postoperative complications.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.897

Figure 1 Platelets and liver regeneration. Platelets translocate into the space of Disse and release insulin-like growth factor-1, hepatocyte growth factor, and vascular endothelial growth factor. The direct contact of platelets with liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs) results in the excretion of interleukin-6 (IL-6) from LSECs. In addition, the attachment of platelets activates Kupffer cells (KCs) and enhances the release of tumor necrosis factor-alpha and IL-6 from KCs to promote liver regeneration. Moreover, platelets are internalized into hepatocytes and trigger the functional transfer of messenger RNA stored in platelets, which stimulates hepatocyte proliferation. KCs: Kupffer cells; LSECs: Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; IGF-1: Insulin-like growth factor-1; HGF: Hepatocyte growth factor; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; LSECs: Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; IL-6: Interleukin-6; KCs: Kupffer cells; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-alpha.



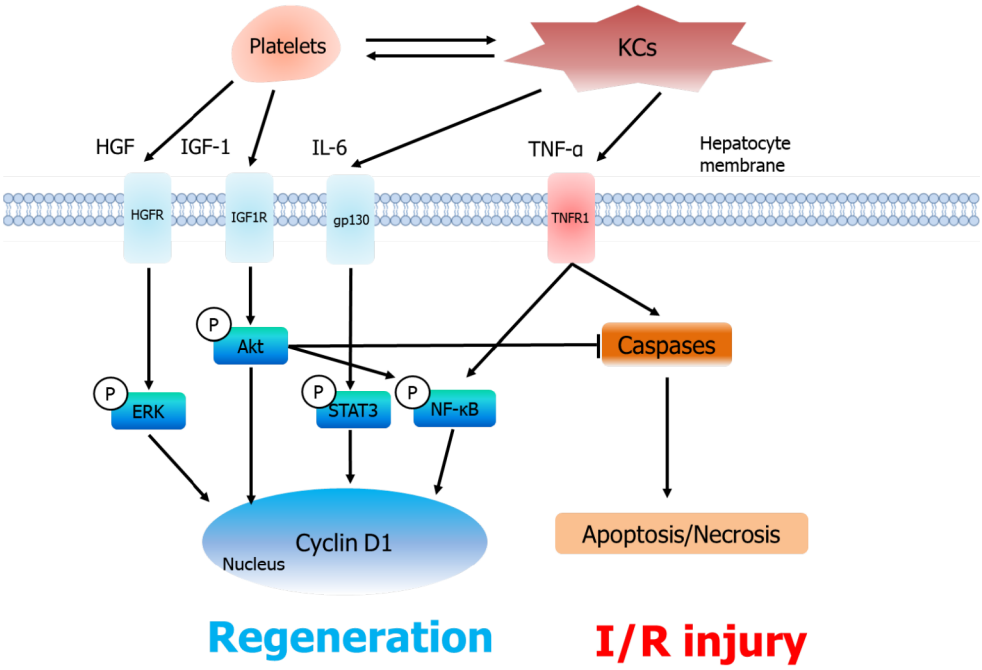
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.897

Figure 2 Platelets and ischemia/reperfusion injury. Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells (LSECs) express selectins and integrins to stimulate the interaction between platelets and LSECs, and platelets result in the excretion of interleukin-6 (IL-6) from LSECs. The generation of tumor necrosis factor-alpha, IL-6 and reactive oxygen species (ROS) from KCs is elevated after the cooperative effect between platelets and KCs. Furthermore, platelets can produce ROS independently and consequently aggravate ischemia/reperfusion injury. KCs: Kupffer cells; LSECs: Liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; IL-6: Interleukin-6; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-alpha; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; I/R injury: Ischemia/reperfusion injury.

The most ambiguous factor concerning platelets and partial LT is TNF-α, which is a pleiotropic cytokine possessing two opposite effects on hepatocytes, namely, promoting proliferation and inducing apoptosis. TNF-α binds to its receptor and activates signaling pathways such as the NF-κB pathway and cyclin protein families to stimulate cellular proliferation[78]. On the other hand, TNF-α can induce apoptosis through caspase cascades[78]. The Akt signaling pathway, which could be activated by IGF-1 [59], was reported to suppress TNF-α-mediated apoptosis through NF-κB activation[78,79]. It was supposed that the elevated secretion of IGF-1 under thrombocytosis enhanced the phosphorylation of Akt and NF-κB and consequently prevented liver grafts from undergoing apoptosis[61]. However, direct evidence proving the interaction between the Akt pathway and IGF-1 or TNF-α was not provided in previous studies. Partial transplantation models using Akt agonists or inhibitors are necessary to clarify the precise mechanisms (Figure 3).

PERSPECTIVES FOR PLATELET THERAPY

Platelet transfusion and TPO receptor agonists are some alternatives to increase perioperative platelet levels in the clinical setting. Platelet transfusion in LT has been controversial, as prophylactic platelet transfusion was reported to have a prothrombotic effect in patients with liver disease[80]. On the other



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.897

Figure 3 Platelets, liver regeneration and ischemia/reperfusion injury after partial liver transplantation. After accumulating in the liver graft, platelets excrete hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) and collaborate with KCs to increase the release of interleukin-6 (IL-6) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α). As a result, the serum levels of HGF, IGF-1, IL-6 and TNF-α increase under thrombocytosis, which consequently induces the phosphorylation of the ERK, Akt, STAT3 and nuclear factor-kappa B signaling pathways to promote liver regeneration (Cyclin D1). On the other hand, platelets do not aggravate in ischemia/reperfusion injury. The phosphorylated Akt pathway inhibits TNF-α-induced apoptosis and necrosis in the liver graft. KCs: Kupffer cells; HGF: Hepatocyte growth factor; IL-6: Interleukin-6; IGF-1: Insulin-like growth factor-1; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-alpha; HGFR: HGF receptor; IGF1R: IGF-1 receptor; gp130: Glycoprotein 130; TNFR1: Tumor necrosis factor receptor; ERK: Extracellular signal-regulated kinase; STAT3: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3; NF-κB: Nuclear factor-kappa B; Caspase: Cysteinyl aspartate specific proteinase; I/R injury: Ischemia/reperfusion injury.

hand, platelet transfusion has been considered to have positive effects on LDLT due to the regeneration capacity of the liver graft, according to previous studies[49-51]. However, several potential problems, such as anaphylaxis reaction, platelet transfusion refractoriness, and transfusion-related lung injury, could be critically harmful to patients[81,82]. Clinical studies have indicated that TPO receptor agonists are more effective than platelet transfusion for chronic liver disease with thrombocytopenia, as shown by the success ratio, effect duration, and nonincidence rate of adverse events[83].

TPO receptor agonists are currently the main focus of pharmaceutical treatment options for thrombocytopenia[84]. There are currently four types of TPO receptor agonists on the market: eltrombopag, avatrombopag, lusutrombopag, and romiplostim. Eltrombopag, avatrombopag, and lusutrombopag are oral TPO receptor agonists approved for patients with thrombocytopenia, and romiplostim is a subcutaneous TPO receptor agonist[85]. Eltrombopag was revealed to increase platelet counts significantly in patients with chronic liver disease, along with an antitumor effect on hepatocellular carcinoma[86]. However, eltrombopag was reported to induce hepatic decompression and thromboembolic events[5]. In addition, romiplostim was shown to have serious side effects leading to bone marrow reticulin fibrosis[87]. Avatrombopag was proven to be generally well tolerated without the occurrence of hepatotoxicity[88]. Although a few thrombotic events were reported[85], there were no serious adverse effects or critical events reported in previous studies. Lusutrombopag was recently released for patients with thrombocytopenia in Japan and the USA[83], with additional effects being reported such as an increase in hematocytes in a patient with compensated liver cirrhosis[89]. There is still no report regarding the side effects of lusutrombopag in clinical practice. For these reasons, avatrombopag and lusutrombopag are promising and may serve as a suitable "platelet therapy" to increase perioperative platelet counts.

CONCLUSION

This review presented accumulated evidence for the role of platelets in LT, especially LDLT, based on clinical and basic studies. Platelets have both beneficial and detrimental effects on liver grafts, with generally positive roles in liver regeneration and potentially negative roles in I/R injury. Clinical and basic studies have broadened our horizons about altering platelet counts in patients undergoing LDLT, and "platelet therapy" may provide prophylactic or therapeutic strategies to enhance the beneficial

effects on LDLT.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Liang C, Takahashi K, Furuya K, Ohkohchi N, and Oda T contributed equally to this work; Liang C and Takahashi K wrote the paper; all authors provided final approval of the version that was submitted.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the senior author or other coauthors contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

Country/Territory of origin: Japan

ORCID number: Chen Liang 0000-0002-4528-7303; Kazuhiro Takahashi 0000-0003-1089-0644; Kinji Furuya 0000-0002-2630-3072; Nobuhiro Ohkohchi 0000-0003-2779-1247; Tatsuya Oda 0000-0001-6115-0158.

S-Editor: Chang KL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chang KL

REFERENCES

1 **Hutchison DE**, Genton E, Porter KA, Daloze PM, Huguet C, Brettschneider L, Groth CG, Starzl TE. Platelet changes following clinical and experimental hepatic homotransplantation. *Arch Surg* 1968; **97**: 27-33 [PMID: 4232038 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1968.01340010057003]
2 **Amygdalos I**, Czigany Z, Bednarsch J, Boecker J, Santana DAM, Meister FA, von der Massen J, Liu WJ, Strnad P, Neumann UP, Lurje G. Low Postoperative Platelet Counts Are Associated with Major Morbidity and Inferior Survival in Adult Recipients of Orthotopic Liver Transplantation. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2020; **24**: 1996-2007 [PMID: 31388889 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-019-04337-3]
3 **Pamecha V**, Mahansaria SS, Kumar S, Bharathy KG, Sasturkar SV, Sinha PK, Kumar N, Kumar V. Association of thrombocytopenia with outcome following adult living donor liver transplantation. *Transpl Int* 2016; **29**: 1126-1135 [PMID: 27429066 DOI: 10.1111/tri.12819]
4 **Himmelreich G**, Hundt K, Isenberg C, Bechstein WO, Neuhaus P, Riess H. Thrombocytopenia and platelet dysfunction in orthotopic liver transplantation. *Semin Thromb Hemost* 1993; **19**: 209-212 [PMID: 8362249 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-994027]
5 **Takahashi K**, Liang C, Oda T, Ohkohchi N. Platelet and liver regeneration after liver surgery. *Surg Today* 2020; **50**: 974-983 [PMID: 31720801 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-019-01890-x]
6 **Machlus KR**, Thon JN, Italiano JE Jr. Interpreting the developmental dance of the megakaryocyte: a review of the cellular and molecular processes mediating platelet formation. *Br J Haematol* 2014; **165**: 227-236 [PMID: 24499183 DOI: 10.1111/bjh.12758]
7 **Holmsen H**. Platelet metabolism and activation. *Semin Hematol* 1985; **22**: 219-240 [PMID: 2994234]
8 **Laki K**. Our ancient heritage in blood clotting and some of its consequences. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1972; **202**: 297-307 [PMID: 4508929 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1972.tb16342.x]
9 **Li Q**, Wang Y, Ma T, Ren F, Mu F, Wu R, Lv Y, Wang B. Preoperative platelet count predicts posttransplant portal vein complications in orthotopic liver transplantation: a propensity score analysis. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2021; **21**: 1 [PMID: 33407176 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-020-01553-z]
10 **Sindram D**, Porte RJ, Hoffman MR, Bentley RC, Clavien PA. Platelets induce sinusoidal endothelial cell apoptosis upon reperfusion of the cold ischemic rat liver. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 183-191 [PMID: 10611167 DOI: 10.1016/s0016-5085(00)70427-6]
11 **Lesurtel M**, Graf R, Aleil B, Walther DJ, Tian Y, Jochum W, Gachet C, Bader M, Clavien PA. Platelet-derived serotonin mediates liver regeneration. *Science* 2006; **312**: 104-107 [PMID: 16601191 DOI: 10.1126/science.1123842]
12 **Cywes R**, Packham MA, Tietze L, Sanabria JR, Harvey PR, Phillips MJ, Strasberg SM. Role of platelets in hepatic allograft preservation injury in the rat. *Hepatology* 1993; **18**: 635-647 [PMID: 8359805]
13 **Suzuki H**, Yamazaki H, Tanoue K. Immunocytochemical aspects of platelet membrane glycoproteins and adhesive proteins during activation. *Prog Histochem Cytochem* 1996; **30**: 1-106 [PMID: 8824844 DOI: 10.1016/s0079-6336(96)80009-x]
14 **Blair P**, Flaumenhaft R. Platelet alpha-granules: basic biology and clinical correlates. *Blood Rev* 2009; **23**: 177-189 [PMID: 19450911 DOI: 10.1016/j.blre.2009.04.001]
15 **McNicol A**, Israels SJ. Platelet dense granules: structure, function and implications for haemostasis. *Thromb Res* 1999; **95**: 1-18 [PMID: 10403682 DOI: 10.1016/s0049-3848(99)00015-8]
16 **Polasek J**. Platelet secretory granules or secretory lysosomes? *Platelets* 2005; **16**: 500-501 [PMID: 16287618 DOI: 10.1080/09537100500169926]

17 **Meirelles Júnior RF**, Salvalaggio P, Rezende MB, Evangelista AS, Guardia BD, Matielo CE, Neves DB, Pandullo FL, Felga GE, Alves JA, Curvelo LA, Diaz LG, Rusi MB, Viveiros Mde M, Almeida MD, Pedroso PT, Rocco RA, Meira Filho SP. Liver transplantation: history, outcomes and perspectives. *Einstein (Sao Paulo)* 2015; **13**: 149-152 [PMID: 25993082 DOI: 10.1590/S1679-45082015RW3164]

18 **Florman S**, Miller CM. Live donor liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2006; **12**: 499-510 [PMID: 16555328 DOI: 10.1002/lt.20754]

19 **Takahashi K**, Nagai S, Collins KM, Safwan M, Rizzari MD, Schnickel GT, Yoshida A, Abouljoud MS. Factors associated with low graft regeneration in the early phase after living donor liver transplantation. *Clin Transplant* 2019; **33**: e13690 [PMID: 31400156 DOI: 10.1111/ctr.13690]

20 **Inci I**, Arni S, Iskender I, Citak N, Rodriguez JM, Weisskopf M, Opitz I, Weder W, Frauenfelder T, Krafft MP, Spahn DR. Functional, Metabolic and Morphologic Results of Ex Vivo Donor Lung Perfusion with a Perfluorocarbon-Based Oxygen Carrier Nanoemulsion in a Large Animal Transplantation Model. *Cells* 2020; **9** [PMID: 33218154 DOI: 10.3390/cells9112501]

21 **Tucker ON**, Heaton N. The 'small for size' liver syndrome. *Curr Opin Crit Care* 2005; **11**: 150-155 [PMID: 15758596 DOI: 10.1097/01.ccx.0000157080.11117.45]

22 **Malik R**, Selden C, Hodgson H. The role of non-parenchymal cells in liver growth. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2002; **13**: 425-431 [PMID: 12468243 DOI: 10.1016/s1084952102001301]

23 **Mao SA**, Glorioso JM, Nyberg SL. Liver regeneration. *Transl Res* 2014; **163**: 352-362 [PMID: 24495569 DOI: 10.1016/j.trsl.2014.01.005]

24 **Ibrahim S**, Weiss TS. Augmenter of liver regeneration: Essential for growth and beyond. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2019; **45**: 65-80 [PMID: 30579845 DOI: 10.1016/j.cytogfr.2018.12.003]

25 **Fausto N**. Liver regeneration and repair: hepatocytes, progenitor cells, and stem cells. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1477-1487 [PMID: 15185286 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20214]

26 **Iwai M**, Cui TX, Kitamura H, Saito M, Shimazu T. Increased secretion of tumour necrosis factor and interleukin 6 from isolated, perfused liver of rats after partial hepatectomy. *Cytokine* 2001; **13**: 60-64 [PMID: 11145844 DOI: 10.1006/cyto.2000.0797]

27 **Cressman DE**, Diamond RH, Taub R. Rapid activation of the Stat3 transcription complex in liver regeneration. *Hepatology* 1995; **21**: 1443-1449 [PMID: 7737651]

28 **Michalopoulos GK**, Khan Z. Liver regeneration, growth factors, and amphiregulin. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 503-506 [PMID: 15685562 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.12.039]

29 **Hirao H**, Nakamura K, Kupiec-Weglinski JW. Liver ischaemia-reperfusion injury: a new understanding of the role of innate immunity. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021 [PMID: 34837066 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-021-00549-8]

30 **Wisse E**. An ultrastructural characterization of the endothelial cell in the rat liver sinusoid under normal and various experimental conditions, as a contribution to the distinction between endothelial and Kupffer cells. *J Ultrastruct Res* 1972; **38**: 528-562 [PMID: 4335119 DOI: 10.1016/0022-5320(72)90089-5]

31 **Caldwell-Kenkel JC**, Thurman RG, Lemasters JJ. Selective loss of nonparenchymal cell viability after cold ischemic storage of rat livers. *Transplantation* 1988; **45**: 834-837 [PMID: 3282369]

32 **Vollmar B**, Glasz J, Leiderer R, Post S, Menger MD. Hepatic microcirculatory perfusion failure is a determinant of liver dysfunction in warm ischemia-reperfusion. *Am J Pathol* 1994; **145**: 1421-1431 [PMID: 7992845]

33 **Baidya R**, Crawford DHG, Gautheron J, Wang H, Bridle KR. Necroptosis in Hepatosteatotic Ischaemia-Reperfusion Injury. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32824744 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21165931]

34 **Gan I**, Jiang J, Lian D, Huang X, Fuhrmann B, Liu W, Haig A, Jevnikar AM, Zhang ZX. Mitochondrial permeability regulates cardiac endothelial cell necroptosis and cardiac allograft rejection. *Am J Transplant* 2019; **19**: 686-698 [PMID: 30203531 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.15112]

35 **Pasparakis M**, Vandenabeele P. Necroptosis and its role in inflammation. *Nature* 2015; **517**: 311-320 [PMID: 25592536 DOI: 10.1038/nature14191]

36 **Festjens N**, Vanden Berghe T, Vandenabeele P. Necrosis, a well-orchestrated form of cell demise: signalling cascades, important mediators and concomitant immune response. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2006; **1757**: 1371-1387 [PMID: 16950166 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbabio.2006.06.014]

37 **Alkozai EM**, Nijsten MW, de Jong KP, de Boer MT, Peeters PM, Slooff MJ, Porte RJ, Lisman T. Immediate postoperative low platelet count is associated with delayed liver function recovery after partial liver resection. *Ann Surg* 2010; **251**: 300-306 [PMID: 19779326 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181b76557]

38 **Kim SJ**, Na GH, Choi HJ, You Y, Kim DG. Effect of donor right hepatectomy on splenic volume and platelet count for living donor liver transplantation. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2013; **17**: 1576-1583 [PMID: 23838887 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2219-0]

39 **Margonis GA**, Amini N, Buettner S, Besharati S, Kim Y, Sobhani F, Kamel IR, Pawlik TM. Impact of early postoperative platelet count on volumetric liver gain and perioperative outcomes after major liver resection. *Br J Surg* 2016; **103**: 899-907 [PMID: 26961709 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.10120]

40 **Takahashi K**, Kurokawa T, Oshiro Y, Fukunaga K, Sakashita S, Ohkohchi N. Postoperative Decrease in Platelet Counts Is Associated with Delayed Liver Function Recovery and Complications after Partial Hepatectomy. *Tohoku J Exp Med* 2016; **239**: 47-55 [PMID: 27181573 DOI: 10.1620/tjem.239.47]

41 **Plevak DJ**, Halma GA, Forstrom LA, Dewanjee MK, O'Connor MK, Moore SB, Krom RA, Rettke SR. Thrombocytopenia after liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 1988; **20**: 630-633 [PMID: 3279654]

42 **Ben Hamida C**, Lauzet JY, Rézaiguia-Delclaux S, Duvoux C, Cherqui D, Duvaldestin P, Stéphan F. Effect of severe thrombocytopenia on patient outcome after liver transplantation. *Intensive Care Med* 2003; **29**: 756-762 [PMID: 12677370 DOI: 10.1007/s00134-003-1727-x]

43 **McCaughan GW**, Herkes R, Powers B, Rickard K, Gallagher ND, Thompson JF, Sheil AG. Thrombocytopenia post liver transplantation. Correlations with pre-operative platelet count, blood transfusion requirements, allograft function and outcome. *J Hepatol* 1992; **16**: 16-22 [PMID: 1484150 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(05)80089-3]

44 **Chatzipetrou MA**, Tsaroucha AK, Weppler D, Pappas PA, Kenyon NS, Nery JR, Khan MF, Kato T, Pinna AD, O'Brien C, Viciana A, Ricordi C, Tzakis AG. Thrombocytopenia after liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 1999; **67**: 702-706 [PMID: 10096525 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199903150-00010]

45 **Chang FY**, Singh N, Gayowski T, Wagener MM, Mietzner SM, Stout JE, Marino IR. Thrombocytopenia in liver transplant recipients: predictors, impact on fungal infections, and role of endogenous thrombopoietin. *Transplantation* 2000; **69**: 70-75 [PMID: 10653383 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-200001150-00014]

46 **Gwiasda J**, Schrem H, Klempnauer J, Kaltenborn A. Identifying independent risk factors for graft loss after primary liver transplantation. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2017; **402**: 757-766 [PMID: 28573420 DOI: 10.1007/s00423-017-1594-5]

47 **Zahr Eldeen F**, Roll GR, Derosas C, Rao R, Khan MS, Gunson BK, Hodson J, Mergental H, Ferraz-Neto BH, Isaac J, Muiesan P, Mirza DF, Iqbal A, Perera MT. Preoperative Thromboelastography as a Sensitive Tool Predicting Those at Risk of Developing Early Hepatic Artery Thrombosis After Adult Liver Transplantation. *Transplantation* 2016; **100**: 2382-2390 [PMID: 27780186 DOI: 10.1097/tp.0000000000001395]

48 **Li L**, Wang H, Yang J, Jiang L, Wang W, Yan L, Wen T, Li B, Xu M. Immediate Postoperative Low Platelet Counts After Living Donor Liver Transplantation Predict Early Allograft Dysfunction. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2015; **94**: e1373 [PMID: 26313775 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000001373]

49 **Kim J**, Yi NJ, Shin WY, Kim T, Lee KU, Suh KS. Platelet transfusion can be related to liver regeneration after living donor liver transplantation. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 1052-1058 [PMID: 20151125 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0464-x]

50 **Han S**, Park HW, Song JH, Gwak MS, Lee WJ, Kim G, Lee SK, Ko JS. Association Between Intraoperative Platelet Transfusion and Early Graft Regeneration in Living Donor Liver Transplantation. *Ann Surg* 2016; **264**: 1065-1072 [PMID: 26720430 DOI: 10.1097/sla.0000000000001526]

51 **Han S**, Ko JS, Gwak MS, Kim GS. Association of Platelet Count and Platelet Transfusion With Serotonin Level During Living Donor Liver Transplantation: Possible Connection to Graft Regeneration. *Transplant Proc* 2018; **50**: 1104-1107 [PMID: 29731075 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2018.02.035]

52 **Lei J**, Yan L, Wang W. Donor safety in living donor liver transplantation: a single-center analysis of 300 cases. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61769 [PMID: 23637904 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061769]

53 **Kim SH**, Kim YK. Improving outcomes of living-donor right hepatectomy. *Br J Surg* 2013; **100**: 528-534 [PMID: 23288584 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.9022]

54 **Miller CM**, Durand F, Heimbach JK, Kim-Schluger L, Lee SG, Lerut J, Lo CM, Quintini C, Pomfret EA. The International Liver Transplant Society Guideline on Living Liver Donation. *Transplantation* 2016; **100**: 1238-1243 [PMID: 27120453 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0000000000001247]

55 **Yoshino K**, Taura K, Ikeno Y, Okuda Y, Nishio T, Yamamoto G, Seo S, Yagi S, Hata K, Kaido T, Okajima H, Uemoto S. Low Preoperative Platelet Count Predicts Risk of Subclinical Posthepatectomy Liver Failure in Right Lobe Donors for Liver Transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2018; **24**: 1178-1185 [PMID: 29679437 DOI: 10.1002/lt.25181]

56 **Kim PT**, Testa G. Living donor liver transplantation in the USA. *Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr* 2016; **5**: 133-140 [PMID: 27115007 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2304-3881.2015.06.01]

57 **Rendu F**, Brohard-Bohn B. The platelet release reaction: granules' constituents, secretion and functions. *Platelets* 2001; **12**: 261-273 [PMID: 11487378 DOI: 10.1080/09537100120068170]

58 **De Rudder M**, Dili A, Stärkel P, Leclercq IA. Critical Role of LSEC in Post-Hepatectomy Liver Regeneration and Failure. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 34360818 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22158053]

59 **Murata S**, Ohkohchi N, Matsuo R, Ikeda O, Myronovych A, Hoshi R. Platelets promote liver regeneration in early period after hepatectomy in mice. *World J Surg* 2007; **31**: 808-816 [PMID: 17354025 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-006-0772-3]

60 **Han S**. Possible roles of platelets in liver transplantation: regeneration and cancer recurrence. *Anesth Pain Med (Seoul)* 2021; **16**: 225-231 [PMID: 34352964 DOI: 10.17085/apm.21063]

61 **Liang C**, Takahashi K, Furuya K, Oda T, Ohkohchi N. Platelets Stimulate Liver Regeneration in a Rat Model of Partial Liver Transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2021; **27**: 719-734 [PMID: 33277780 DOI: 10.1002/lt.25962]

62 **Takahashi K**, Murata S, Ohkohchi N. Novel therapy for liver regeneration by increasing the number of platelets. *Surg Today* 2013; **43**: 1081-1087 [PMID: 23180116 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-012-0418-z]

63 **Kirschbaum M**, Karimian G, Adelmeijer J, Giepmans BN, Porte RJ, Lisman T. Horizontal RNA transfer mediates platelet-induced hepatocyte proliferation. *Blood* 2015; **126**: 798-806 [PMID: 26056167 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2014-09-600312]

64 **Montalvo-Jave EE**, Escalante-Tattersfield T, Ortega-Salgado JA, Piña E, Geller DA. Factors in the pathophysiology of the liver ischemia-reperfusion injury. *J Surg Res* 2008; **147**: 153-159 [PMID: 17707862 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2007.06.015]

65 **Rah DK**, Min HJ, Kim YW, Cheon YW. Effect of Platelet-Rich Plasma on Ischemia-Reperfusion Injury in a Skin Flap Mouse Model. *Int J Med Sci* 2017; **14**: 829-839 [PMID: 28824320 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.19573]

66 **Kalogeris T**, Baines CP, Krenz M, Korthuis RJ. Ischemia/Reperfusion. *Compr Physiol* 2016; **7**: 113-170 [PMID: 28135002 DOI: 10.1002/cphy.c160006]

67 **Ide T**, Tsutsui H, Kinugawa S, Utsumi H, Kang D, Hattori N, Uchida K, Arimura Ki, Egashira K, Takeshita A. Mitochondrial electron transport complex I is a potential source of oxygen free radicals in the failing myocardium. *Circ Res* 1999; **85**: 357-363 [PMID: 10455064 DOI: 10.1161/01.res.85.4.357]

68 **Pignatelli P**, Pulcinelli FM, Lenti L, Gazzaniga PP, Violi F. Hydrogen peroxide is involved in collagen-induced platelet activation. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 484-490 [PMID: 9427701]

69 **Violi F**, Pignatelli P. Platelet oxidative stress and thrombosis. *Thromb Res* 2012; **129**: 378-381 [PMID: 22209450 DOI: 10.1016/j.thromres.2011.12.002]

70 **Jin RC**, Mahoney CE, Coleman Anderson L, Ottaviano F, Croce K, Leopold JA, Zhang YY, Tang SS, Handy DE, Loscalzo J. Glutathione peroxidase-3 deficiency promotes platelet-dependent thrombosis in vivo. *Circulation* 2011; **123**: 1963-1973 [PMID: 21518981 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.110.000034]

71 **Ghasemzadeh M**, Hosseini E. Platelet granule release is associated with reactive oxygen species generation during platelet storage: A direct link between platelet pro-inflammatory and oxidation states. *Thromb Res* 2017; **156**: 101-104 [PMID: 28623810 DOI: 10.1016/j.thromres.2017.06.016]

72 **Del Principe D**, Menichelli A, De Matteis W, Di Giulio S, Giordani M, Savini I, Agro AF. Hydrogen peroxide is an intermediate in the platelet activation cascade triggered by collagen, but not by thrombin. *Thromb Res* 1991; **62**: 365-375 [PMID: 1896957 DOI: 10.1016/0049-3848(91)90010-t]

73 **Pignatelli P**, Carnevale R, Di Santo S, Bartimoccia S, Sanguigni V, Lenti L, Finocchi A, Mendolicchio L, Soresina AR, Plebani A, Violi F. Inherited human gp91phox deficiency is associated with impaired isoprostane formation and platelet dysfunction. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2011; **31**: 423-434 [PMID: 21071703 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.110.217885]

74 **Oberkofler CE**, Limani P, Jang JH, Rickenbacher A, Lehmann K, Raptis DA, Ungethuem U, Tian Y, Grabliauskaite K, Humar R, Graf R, Humar B, Clavien PA. Systemic protection through remote ischemic preconditioning is spread by platelet-dependent signaling in mice. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 1409-1417 [PMID: 24700614 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27089]

75 **Iwasaki J**, Afify M, Bleilevens C, Klinge U, Weiskirchen R, Steitz J, Vogt M, Yagi S, Nagai K, Uemoto S, Tolba RH. The Impact of a Nitric Oxide Synthase Inhibitor (L-NAME) on Ischemia–Reperfusion Injury of Cholestatic Livers by Pringle Maneuver and Liver Resection after Bile Duct Ligation in Rats. *Int J Mol Sci* 2019; **20** [PMID: 31035686 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20092114]

76 **Renn TY**, Kao YH, Wang CC, Burnouf T. Anti-inflammatory effects of platelet biomaterials in a macrophage cellular model. *Vox Sang* 2015; **109**: 138-147 [PMID: 25899557 DOI: 10.1111/vox.12264]

77 **Taki-Eldin A**, Zhou L, Xie HY, Zheng SS. Liver regeneration after liver transplantation. *Eur Surg Res* 2012; **48**: 139-153 [PMID: 22572792 DOI: 10.1159/000337865]

78 **Jing ZT**, Liu W, Xue CR, Wu SX, Chen WN, Lin XJ, Lin X. AKT activator SC79 protects hepatocytes from TNF-α-mediated apoptosis and alleviates d-Gal/LPS-induced liver injury. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2019; **316**: G387-G396 [PMID: 30629471 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00350.2018]

79 **Valizadeh A**, Majidinia M, Samadi-Kafil H, Yousefi M, Yousefi B. The roles of signaling pathways in liver repair and regeneration. *J Cell Physiol* 2019 [PMID: 30770551 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.28336]

80 **von Meijenfeldt FA**, van den Boom BP, Adelmeijer J, Roberts LN, Lisman T, Bernal W. Prophylactic fresh frozen plasma and platelet transfusion have a prothrombotic effect in patients with liver disease. *J Thromb Haemost* 2021; **19**: 664-676 [PMID: 33219597 DOI: 10.1111/jth.15185]

81 **Howard JE**, Perkins HA. The natural history of alloimmunization to platelets. *Transfusion* 1978; **18**: 496-503 [PMID: 684804 DOI: 10.1046/j.1537-2995.1978.18478251250.x]

82 **Pereboom IT**, de Boer MT, Haagsma EB, Hendriks HG, Lisman T, Porte RJ. Platelet transfusion during liver transplantation is associated with increased postoperative mortality due to acute lung injury. *Anesth Analg* 2009; **108**: 1083-1091 [PMID: 19299765 DOI: 10.1213/ane.0b013e3181948a59]

83 **Furuichi Y**, Takeuchi H, Yoshimasu Y, Kasai Y, Abe M, Itoi T. Thrombopoietin receptor agonist is more effective than platelet transfusion for chronic liver disease with thrombocytopenia, shown by propensity score matching. *Hepatol Res* 2020; **50**: 1062-1070 [PMID: 32510789 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.13530]

84 **Maan R**, de Knegt RJ, Veldt BJ. Management of Thrombocytopenia in Chronic Liver Disease: Focus on Pharmacotherapeutic Strategies. *Drugs* 2015; **75**: 1981-1992 [PMID: 26501978 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-015-0480-0]

85 **Cheloff AZ**, Al-Samkari H. Avatrombopag for the treatment of immune thrombocytopenia and thrombocytopenia of chronic liver disease. *J Blood Med* 2019; **10**: 313-321 [PMID: 31565009 DOI: 10.2147/JBM.S191790]

86 **Ramadori P**, Klag T, Malek NP, Heikenwalder M. Platelets in chronic liver disease, from bench to bedside. *JHEP Rep* 2019; **1**: 448-459 [PMID: 32039397 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhepr.2019.10.001]

87 **Leung T**, Lokan J, Turner P, Smith C. Reversible bone marrow reticulin fibrosis as a side effect of romiplostim therapy for the treatment of chronic refractory immune thrombocytopenia. *Pathology* 2011; **43**: 520-522 [PMID: 21753725 DOI: 10.1097/PAT.0b013e328348fecc]

88 **Terrault N**, Chen YC, Izumi N, Kayali Z, Mitrut P, Tak WY, Allen LF, Hassanein T. Avatrombopag Before Procedures Reduces Need for Platelet Transfusion in Patients With Chronic Liver Disease and Thrombocytopenia. *Gastroenterology* 2018; **155**: 705-718 [PMID: 29778606 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.05.025]

89 **Sakamaki A**, Watanabe T, Abe S, Kamimura K, Tsuchiya A, Takamura M, Kawai H, Yamagiwa S, Terai S. Lusutrombopag increases hematocytes in a compensated liver cirrhosis patient. *Clin J Gastroenterol* 2017; **10**: 261-264 [PMID: 28324272 DOI: 10.1007/s12328-017-0735-2]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 909-917

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Applications of endoscopic ultrasound elastography in pancreatic diseases: From literature to real life

Clara Benedetta Conti, Giacomo Mulinacci, Raffaele Salerno, Marco Emilio Dinelli, Roberto Grassia

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Morozov S, Tolunay HE

Received: September 27, 2021
Peer-review started: September 27, 2021
First decision: November 7, 2021
Revised: November 11, 2021
Accepted: January 29, 2022
Article in press: January 29, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Clara Benedetta Conti, Giacomo Mulinacci, Marco Emilio Dinelli, Interventional Endoscopy Unit, ASST Monza, Ospedale San Gerardo, Monza 20900, Italy

Raffaele Salerno, Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Unit, ASST Fatebenefratelli-Sacco, Milan 20121, Italy

Roberto Grassia, Gastroenterology and Endoscopy Unit, ASST Cremona, Cremona 26100, Italy

Corresponding author: Clara Benedetta Conti, MD, Consultant Physician-Scientist, Interventional Endoscopy Unit, ASST Monza, Ospedale San Gerardo, Via G.B. Pergolesi 30, Monza 20900, Italy. benedetta.conti1@gmail.com

Abstract

Elastography is a non-invasive method widely used to measure the stiffness of the tissues, and it is available in most endoscopic ultrasound machines, using either qualitative or quantitative techniques. Endoscopic ultrasound elastography is a tool that should be applied to obtain a complementary evaluation of pancreatic diseases, together with other imaging tests and clinical data. Elastography can be informative, especially when studying pancreatic masses and help the clinician in the differential diagnosis between benign or malignant lesions. However, further studies are necessary to standardize the method, increase the reproducibility and establish definitive cut-offs to distinguish between benign and malignant pancreatic masses. Moreover, even if promising, elastography still provides little information in the evaluation of benign conditions.

Key Words: Elastography; Pancreas; Pancreatic stiffness; Pancreatitis; Pancreatic cancer; Endosonography; Endoscopic ultrasound; Quantitative elastography; Strain elastography; Pancreatic diseases

Core Tip: Elastography is largely available in most endoscopic ultrasound machines, using either qualitative or quantitative methods. The application of elastography in the study of pancreatic diseases should be considered as a complementary test, together with other imaging and clinical data. Elastography can help the clinician in the diagnosis of pancreatic masses, whereas there is still little information in the case of pancreatitis. Further studies are necessary to standardize the method and above all to establish definitive cut-offs to distinguish between benign and malignant pancreatic masses.

Citation: Conti CB, Mulinacci G, Salerno R, Dinelli ME, Grassia R. Applications of endoscopic ultrasound elastography in pancreatic diseases: From literature to real life. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 909-917
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/909.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

INTRODUCTION

Elastography is a non-invasive method used to measure the stiffness of different tissues[1,2].

Nowadays, it is widely used in various medical fields, and it is available in most endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) machines as an integrated software. EUS stiffness measurement can be assessed using either a qualitative or a quantitative method.

Qualitative elastography

The qualitative technique, known as strain elastography, is a method based on the use of a colored scale: red-green areas indicate softer tissues, whereas blue areas indicate stiffer tissues. This type of measurement is useful but does not allow a quantitative measurement. Its clinical application is simple and intuitive, and this explains its large use. However, since the interpretation of different colors and images is largely operator dependent, it lacks reproducibility. Thus, it provides little information when comparing different patients, lesions, or diffuse diseases[3,4].

Semi-quantitative and quantitative elastography

Semi-quantitative analysis allows a numeric measurement of the tissue stiffness by using both the strain ratio (SR) and the strain histogram technique.

When using the SR, the operator sets a bigger region of interest (ROI), usually a circle or a square, on the target tissue (*i.e.* a lesion) and a smaller ROI above a reference tissue, usually a homogeneous soft area. The SR is calculated by dividing the stiffness data of the two regions, expressed either by the speed wave through the tissues (m/s) or converted to the Young's modulus (kPa)[5]. This technique is largely used in the evaluation of pancreatic lesions, where the reference tissue is the normal pancreas. However, despite its quantitative nature, this analysis only allows partial information of the tissue, without giving the mean and median stiffness values of the lesion.

Conversely, the strain histogram method generates an average hue histogram that graphically represents the colors and therefore the stiffness distribution within the tissue. The mean value of the histogram can thus be considered a good esteem of the real elasticity of the target[6,7]. This method can be more informative when facing a large tissue, such as a diffuse pancreatic disease, as it collects the stiffness of different areas and gives the operator a unique average value.

EUS shear wave measurement (SWM) allows a quantitative measurement of the stiffness, and it can be expressed in either m/s or in kPa[5]. This method provides a numeric value, usually a mean and a median value of the tissue stiffness. This technique is theoretically more informative than the semi-quantitative one, as it simplifies a comparison between individuals or diseases. The final value can be obtained by a single measurement or by calculating the mean and median value of repeated measurements. The operator sets the ROI within the target tissue or lesion and obtains several values through the repetition of the measurement, usually five or ten. Successively, the mean and median measurement value can be calculated. Hence, a more accurate stiffness assessment is provided[3,8,9]. Overall, the best image quality can be achieved when the lesion of interest covers up to 50% of the ROI [10]. This method, largely used in United States machines, is rarely available in EUS machines.

The large application of EUS elastography in the diagnosis of pancreatic diseases is relatively new. Moreover, its use in routine practice lacks a high diagnostic accuracy, especially due to the large use of the qualitative method. Accounting for the poor reproducibility and the absence of definitive diagnostic cut-offs, the chance to standardize the method is low. Therefore, the use and the interpretation of elastography in pancreatic diseases are still challenging for clinicians.

This review aims to describe the main applications of EUS elastography in pancreatic diseases, its practical value, and its main limitations.

We performed an accurate literature search using the following MESH terms: "Pancreas;" "pancreatitis;" "chronic pancreatitis;" "acute pancreatitis;" "pancreatic cancer;" "pancreatic lesion;" "elastography;" "elastography AND pancreas;" "pancreatic stiffness;" "endoscopic ultrasound;" "EUS AND elastography;" "ultrasonography AND elastography;" "quantitative elastography AND pancreatitis;" "elastography AND pancreatic cancer;" "autoimmune pancreatitis;" "elastography AND acute pancreatitis;" "focal autoimmune pancreatitis AND diagnosis;" "inflammatory pancreatic masses;" "elastography AND cancer;" and "NET AND elastography." We identified all the pertinent articles (reviews, original articles, and meta-analyses) published between 2000 and 2021 with an available abstract and/or full text. The reference lists from the selected studies were examined to identify further relevant reports. Only English language papers were included. The level of evidence and strength of recommendations were graded according to the Oxford Centre of Evidence-Based Medicine system as of the March 2009 update (http://www.cebm. net/oxford-centre-evidence-based-medicine-levels-evidence-march-2009).

CLINICAL APPLICATION OF EUS ELASTOGRAPHY IN PANCREATIC DISEASES

Application of elastography in benign pancreatic diseases

Chronic pancreatitis: The application of qualitative elastography in cases of chronic pancreatitis (CP) conventionally shows a predominantly green pattern with heterogeneous small red or blue areas[11] (Figure 1). Even if the colored scale adds more information to the B-mode imaging, it is still not pathognomonic for any specific disorder. Semi-quantitative elastography, using histogram or shear waves, aids the interpretation of the elastography data. This technique was used to retrospectively examine 96 patients with either diagnosed or suspected CP. Each patient was classified using Rosemont criteria (Table 1)[12], and elastography values were significantly different for each stage ($P < 0.001$)[13].

Similarly, another study measured pancreatic stiffness (PS) in 84 patients and revealed a significantly positive correlation with the Rosemont classification stage (rs = 0.54) and the number of EUS features (rs = 0.47). Area under the receiver operating characteristic curve (AUROC) for the accuracy of SWM-elastography (consistent with CP and suggestive for CP *vs* normal and indeterminate for CP) was 0.77 (sensitivity 77.1%, specificity 64.9%)[14]. In a multivariate linear regression, hyperechoic foci with shadowing and lobularity with honeycombing were independent features related to PS[10,11].

This data was confirmed by a prospective study with 191 patients, of which 92 were diagnosed with CP. A significant linear correlation was confirmed between the number of EUS criteria of CP and the SR ($r = 0.813$; $P < 0.0001$), with an AUROC of 0.949 [95% confidence interval (CI): 0.916-0.982]. The accuracy of EUS-elastography for diagnosing CP was 91.1% (cut-off SR of 2.25), and the SR varied significantly among different Rosemont classification groups ($P < 0.001$)[15]. Another study measured PS in both pancreatic tumors and healthy surrounding parenchyma of 58 consecutive patients before pancreatectomy. Histological fibrosis was divided into four stages: normal, mild, marked, and severe fibrosis. Using the mean PS value, the AUROC for the diagnosis of each fibrosis stage was 0.90[16]. These findings support the theory of PS measurement as a possible surrogate marker for pancreatic fibrosis.

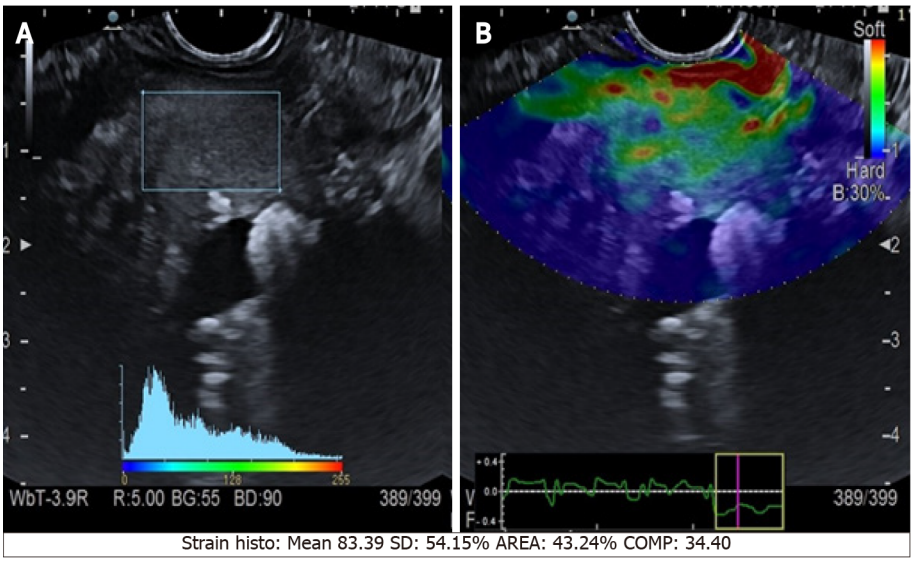
Moreover, a study evaluated 40 patients who underwent pancreatic EUS-SWM. They were classified following the Japan Pancreatic Society criteria for CP. They compared EUS-SWM values of the healthy pancreas with early, probable, and definite CP groups. Notably, the relationship between EUS-SWM value and exocrine/endocrine dysfunction was also assessed. A positive correlation resulted between PS values measured through EUS-SWM and the Japan Pancreatic Society criteria stages, with higher values registered in the CP group. AUROCs for the diagnostic accuracy of EUS-SW measurement for CP, exocrine dysfunction, and endocrine dysfunction were 0.92, 0.78, and 0.63, respectively. The cut-off values of 1.96, 1.96, and 2.34 for diagnosing CP, exocrine dysfunction, and endocrine dysfunctions had a sensitivity of 83%, 90%, and 75% and a specificity of 100%, 65%, and 64%, respectively[17]. Similar results were found by Domínguez-Muñoz *et al*[18]. In the final analysis, elastography seems a promising approach in the evaluation of pancreatitis, even if diagnostic cut-offs are still lacking. Further, large scale studies are awaited to improve the diagnostic accuracy.

Autoimmune pancreatitis: Autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) is a rare condition, even if it is likely underdiagnosed. There is a wide spectrum of radiological features of AIP, from a normal pancreas to diffuse parenchymal enlargement or focal mass-like lesion. The latter radiological appearance is recognized as focal AIP, and it can be easily confused with pancreatic cancer (PC). Thus, it is important to avoid unnecessary surgeries. A correct diagnosis can be reached through the assessment of clinical, laboratory, and histocytological data combined with the EUS evaluation and the assessment of Rosemont Criteria (Table 1). Of note, elastography may help the clinician to differentiate AIP from PC. Indeed, the former usually shows a homogeneous increase of stiffness in the whole organ, while in the latter the increased stiffness is limited within the tumoral area[19]. When using qualitative elastography in AIP, the inflamed area should have a predominantly green pattern with slight red or yellow lines, while a homogeneous green pattern should appear in the normal parenchyma[11]. However, since this does not always occur, the clinician should not completely rely on this pattern presentation to reach the

Table 1 Rosemont criteria for chronic pancreatitis[12]

Diagnostic criteria		Major A	Major B	Minor
Pancreas	Parenchyma	Hyperechoic foci with acoustic shadows; body/tail	Honeycomb-like lobulation; body/tail	Lobulation without honeycombing; body/tail
				Hyperechoic foci without acoustic shadows; body/tail
				Cysts
				Echo-dense septa; body/tail
	Duct	Stones in the duct	None	Irregular duct; body/tail
				Dilated side ducts; body/tail
				Dilated main duct; body/tail
				Hyperechoic contours on the main duct; body/tail

According to them, it is defined as: Definitive: 1 major A + ≥ 3 minor or 1 major A + 1 major B or 2 major A; Suspected: 1 major A + < 3 minor or 1 major B + ≥ 3 minor or ≥ 5 minor; Possible: 3 or 4 minor, no major or major B alone or with < 3 minor; Normal: < 3 minor, no major.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

Figure 1 Quantitative endoscopic ultrasound elastography of chronic pancreatitis. A: Endoscopic ultrasound B-mode with region of interest square; B: Elastographic image.

diagnosis.

The quantitative elastography could theoretically be more informative to diagnose AIP. As such, a study measured the stiffness of 123 lesions (78 PC cases and 45 focal AIP cases), and the SR between the lesion and the surrounding parenchyma correlated significantly with the actual presence of a malignancy[20]. Similarly, in a prospective study of 325 patients assessing the SR lesion/parenchyma, a cut-off value of 4.2 *vs* 10.9 correlated to sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, negative predictive value, and accuracy of 95%, 63%, 89%, 81%, and 87%, respectively *vs* 75%, 88%, 95%, 54%, and 79%, respectively[21].

Moreover, in a meta-analysis that included 17 studies (1544 lesions), the pooled sensitivity and specificity for qualitative elastography in the differential diagnosis between PC and AIP were 0.97 (95%CI: 0.95–0.99) and 0.67 (95%CI: 0.59–0.74), respectively; the pooled sensitivity and specificity for SR were 0.98 (95%CI: 0.96–0.99) and 0.62 (95%CI: 0.56–0.68), respectively. Interestingly, quantitative elastography has been investigated to assess AIP activity in a small series of patients under steroid therapy[22]. A significant decrease of the mean share wave elastography of the pancreas (P = 0.023) was found. Nevertheless, no definitive cut-offs are available either to diagnose AIP and to distinguish between focal AIP and PC.

Therefore, elastography does not represent the main tool to diagnose AIP, and even though helpful, it is not a crucial test in the differential diagnosis between PC and focal AIP. However, its simple application coupled with serial imaging examinations and fine needle biopsies could help clinicians reach a correct diagnosis[19].

Acute pancreatitis: The application of PS in the evaluation of acute pancreatitis is scarce. Unfortunately, up to now no significant data are available in the literature to help the clinician either in the diagnosis or in the stratification of the severity of the condition.

Application of elastography in the evaluation of malignant diseases

Evaluation of PC: Qualitative elastography applied on the pancreatic focal lesions usually shows a geographic appearance, characterized by a heterogeneous, predominantly blue pattern with small green and red areas (Figure 2). A more homogeneous blue pattern is more typical in pancreatic neuroendocrine malignant tumors[11] (Figure 3). Even if not pathognomonic, these findings can be helpful, in particular when there is a clear demarcation from the healthy pancreatic parenchyma, which is usually of a homogenous green color.

The quantitative assessment is apparently much more informative, as it allows the clinician to compare the SR of a mass over the normal surrounding pancreatic parenchyma (Figure 4). Malignant pancreatic masses show a higher SR than the normal parenchyma[23]. However, it seems that no significant difference exists between the accuracy of quantitative and qualitative methods. In a meta-analysis including 10 studies and 893 pancreatic masses (646 malignant, 72.3%), the positive and negative likelihood ratios were 3.15 and 0.03 for qualitative EUS elastography, and 3.94 and 0.05 for quantitative EUS elastography, respectively[24]. Both qualitative and quantitative methods were useful for excluding the presence of PC, but they had a poor diagnostic specificity[24].

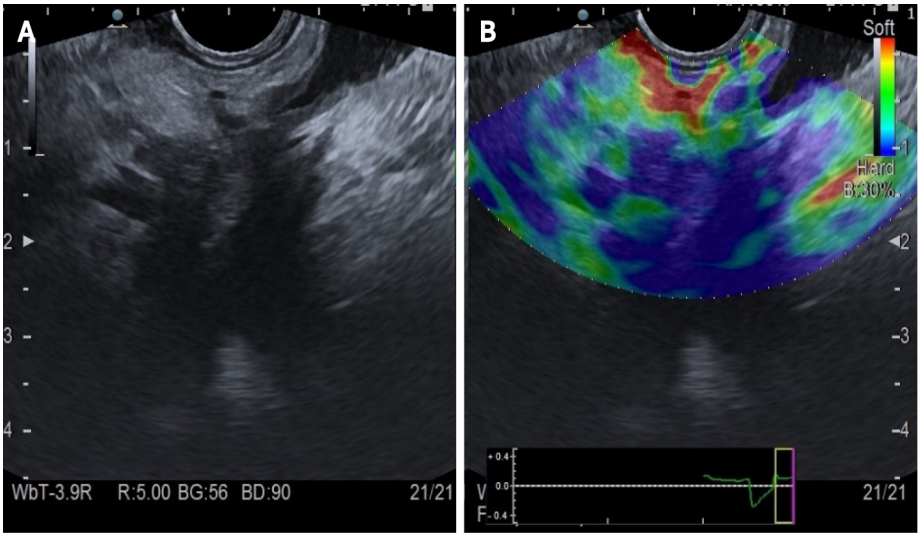
Similar results were found in another meta-analysis[25] involving 1044 patients, in which the pooled sensitivity, specificity, and diagnostic odds ratio of EUS elastography to distinguish benign from malignant solid pancreatic masses were 0.95 (95%CI: 0.94-0.97), 0.67 (95%CI: 0.61-0.73), and 42.28 (95%CI: 26.90-66.46), respectively. The AUROC was 0.9046[26]. Another meta-analysis involving 17 studies (1544 lesions) showed a pooled sensitivity and specificity for qualitative methods of 0.97 (95%CI: 0.95-0.99) and 0.67 (95%CI: 0.59-0.74), respectively[27]. The pooled sensitivity and specificity for strain histograms were 0.97 (95%CI: 0.95-0.98) and 0.67 (95%CI: 0.61-0.73), and the pooled sensitivity and specificity for SR were 0.98 (95%CI: 0.96-0.99) and 0.62 (95%CI: 0.56-0.68). Furthermore, they investigated the pooled sensitivity and specificity for contrast enhancement EUS, which were 0.90 (95%CI: 0.83-0.95) and 0.76 (95%CI: 0.67-0.84), respectively. To complete, they analyzed the pooled sensitivity and specificity for EUS-fine needle aspiration (FNA), which were 0.84 (95%CI: 0.77-0.90) and 0.96 (95%CI: 0.88-1.00), respectively[27].

Overall, data available in the scientific literature show that the sensitivity of elastography for the diagnosis of PC ranges between 92% to 98%. Despite this observation, the specificity is low, as it varies between 67% and 76%[25-27]. Nevertheless, elastography combined with contrast EUS and FNA is likely to increase the diagnostic accuracy for PC detection[28].

Considering the epidemiological relevance of the pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) among all the pancreatic lesions, the biggest diagnostic effort when facing a pancreatic mass is directed to exclude it (Figure 4). The definition of elastography cut-offs to distinguish PDAC from other types of pancreatic tumors would be of extreme importance. Nevertheless, no definitive cut-offs are available, even if some studies tried to compare different types of pancreatic lesions.

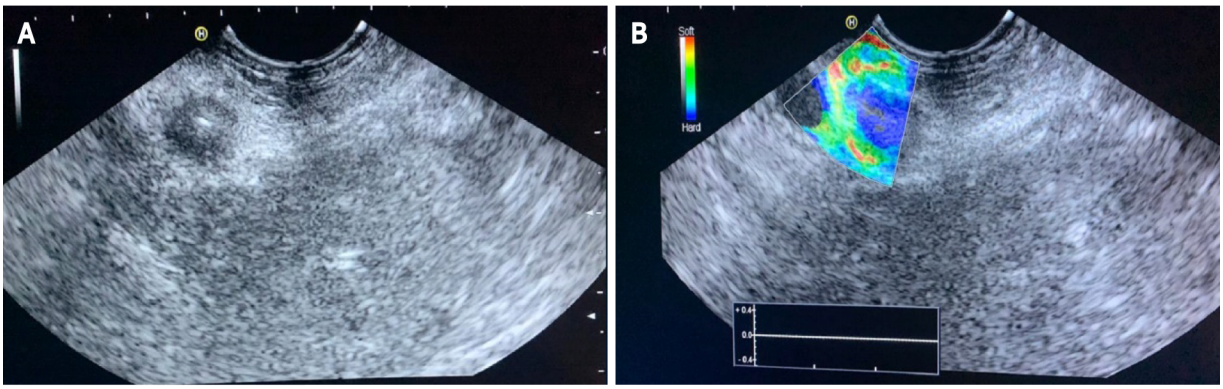
A study included different types of pancreatic solid lesions: 49 PDAC, 27 inflammatory masses, 6 pancreatic neuroendocrine neoplasms, two metastatic cell lung cancers, one pancreatic lymphoma, and one pancreatic solid pseudopapillary tumor. The authors compared these lesions with 20 controls. The mean SRs were: 1.68 (95%CI: 1.59–1.78) for normal pancreatic tissue, 3.28 for inflammatory masses, and 18.12 for pancreatic adenocarcinoma. Interestingly, the highest mean SR was found among neuroendocrine malignant tumors (52.34)[29]. Conversely, in a group of 218 patients with small lesions (23% PDAC, 52% neuroendocrine malignant tumors, 8% metastases, 17% other entities; 66% benign lesions), the high stiffness of the lesion for the diagnosis of malignancy had a sensitivity of 84% (95%CI: 73%-91%), a specificity of 67% (58%-74%), positive predictive value of 56% (50%-62%), and negative predictive value of 89% (83%-93%). For the diagnosis of PDAC, the sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, and negative predictive value were 96% (87%-100%), 64% (56%-71%), 45% (40%-50%), and 98% (93%-100%), respectively. In a group of neuroendocrine neoplasms, 64% had a soft pattern on elastography[30].

Targeted biopsy: Another role of EUS elastography can be the detection of pancreatic areas of increased stiffness within a focal lesion to better target the needle during EUS-FNA or fine needle biopsy. To achieve this aim, the application of qualitative elastography can be considered. Indeed, it allows the clinician to examine the lesion, giving the possibility to the operator to perform the needle insertion in the most suitable region, which usually is the hardest part (the softer is often necrotic tissue)[31]. Overall, the diagnostic accuracy of EUS-elastography guided FNA is good, with diagnostic accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the diagnosis of malignancy of 94%, 93%, and 100%, respectively[32]. No



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

Figure 2 Qualitative endoscopic ultrasound elastography of pancreatic adenocarcinoma of the head. A: Endoscopic ultrasound B-mode; B: Elastographic image.



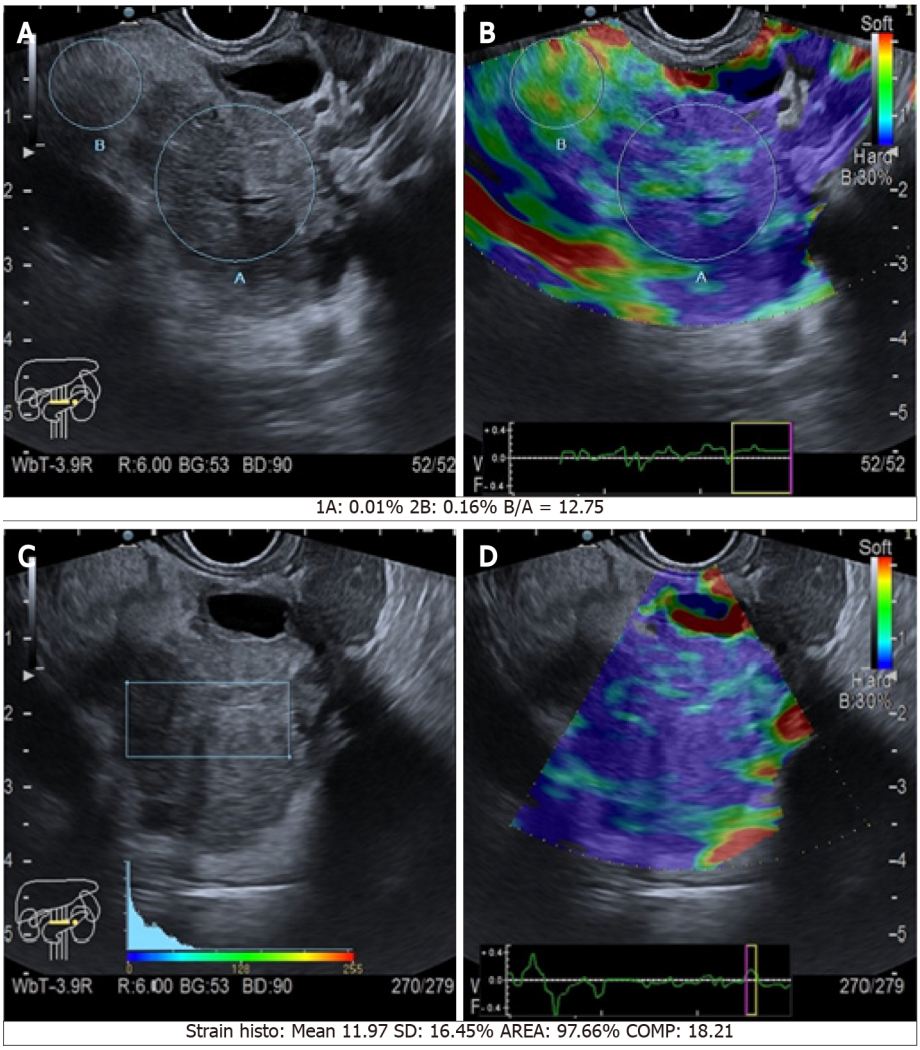
DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

Figure 3 Qualitative endoscopic ultrasound elastography of a neuroendocrine malignant tumor of the pancreatic tail. A: Endoscopic ultrasound B-mode; B: Elastographic image.

large studies that compare EUS-FNA/fine needle biopsy with and without elastography guide are available. Thus, this use of elastography remains possible but not mandatory.

CONCLUSION

EUS elastography is a technically simple, widely available, risk-free, and cheap exam. Thus, its use should be implemented and encouraged. Among its possible roles, EUS elastography helps the clinicians to add some information to the EUS study of pancreatic diseases, either benign or malignant. Elastography should therefore be considered a complementary tool to B-mode imaging. Notwithstanding its potential, clinicians must be aware that the current application of elastography still has little information[13-16], in particular for concerns of pancreatic diffuse benign diseases[11,15-18]. A potential application of this technique would be the ability to non-invasively stratify patients according to different risk categories for developing PC, similarly to the application of elastography in liver diseases [31]. However, so far, no definitive cut-offs have been recognized for the recognition of benign diseases through elastography. One of the main limitations to standardize the PS application is the lack of corresponding histologic samples as a reference standard, both from the healthy pancreas and pancreatic diseases. This happens because performing a pancreatic biopsy in cases of benign conditions would be unethical and risky.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.909

Figure 4 Quantitative endoscopic ultrasound elastography of pancreatic cancers of the body. A and C: B-mode with region of interest circles and square; B and D: Elastographic images.

Conversely, the use of elastography in the study of solid pancreatic lesions seems to be more informative[25-29], thanks to its high negative predictive value for the diagnosis of PC[22-25]. In particular, soft focal solid pancreatic lesions are rarely PDACs, whereas stiff lesions might be malignant or benign[30].

This makes elastography a fair test to exclude the presence of cancer. Moreover, the combination of elastography with FNA and contrast enhanced EUS could improve the accuracy of the diagnosis, even if no definitive data are available[32].

Nevertheless, it should also be highlighted that elastography cannot be considered mandatory during EUS examination of the pancreas, and there are no data supporting a higher diagnostic accuracy for the endosonographers that routinely use elastography *vs* who do not use this method. This latter consideration is mainly supported by the low reproducibility of pancreatic elastography, especially for the qualitative methods[25-28]. One of the major limitations in the use of elastography is the lack of a standardization of the technique. Moreover, the large use of EUS-FNA/fine needle biopsy has increased the accuracy of the diagnosis of PC, and in the case of inadequate sampling or negative cytology/histology, elastography does not have any key role[33]. Summarizing, EUS-related elastography is a tool that should be considered to obtain a complementary evaluation of pancreatic diseases, together with the other imaging tests and clinical data. Elastography can be informative, especially when studying pancreatic masses and help the clinician in the diagnosis. However, further studies are necessary to first standardize the method, increase the reproducibility and establish definitive cut-offs to distinguish between benign and malignant pancreatic lesions.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Conti CB and Grassia R conceived the idea of the manuscript and supervised the findings of the work; Conti CB and Mulinacci G performed the literature search and wrote the draft of the paper with input from all authors; Salerno R and Dinelli ME verified the methods and the contents; Salerno R and Grassia R provided the illustrations by performing the examinations; All authors discussed the results and contributed to the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Clara Benedetta Conti, Giacomo Mulinacci, Raffaele Salerno, Marco Emilio Dinelli, and Roberto Grassia have no conflict of interest.

Country/Territory of origin: Italy

ORCID number: Clara Benedetta Conti 0000-0001-9774-2374; Giacomo Mulinacci 0000-0002-9398-893X; Raffaele Salerno 0000-0001-9201-7755; Marco Emilio Dinelli 0000-0003-0214-0333; Roberto Grassia 0000-0003-4491-4050.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Fan JR

REFERENCES

1 **Tolunay HE**, Eroğlu H, Çelik ÖY, Arat Ö, Obut M, Varlı EN, Şahin D, Yücel A. Can placental elasticity predict the time of delivery in cases of threatened preterm labor? *J Obstet Gynaecol Res* 2021; **47**: 606-612 [PMID: 33200568 DOI: 10.1111/jog.14570]
2 **Tolunay HE**, Eroğlu H, Kaya O, Şahin D, Yücel A. The effect of placental elasticity on intraoperative bleeding in pregnant women with previous cesarean section. *J Perinat Med* 2020; **48**: 217-221 [PMID: 32045355 DOI: 10.1515/jpm-2019-0448]
3 **Dietrich CF**, Hocke M. Elastography of the Pancreas, Current View. *Clin Endosc* 2019; **52**: 533-540 [PMID: 31311914 DOI: 10.5946/ce.2018.156]
4 **Dietrich CF**, Burmeister S, Hollerbach S, Arcidiacono PG, Braden B, Fusaroli P, Hocke M, Iglesias-Garcia J, Kitano M, Larghi A, Napoleon B, Oppong KW, Rimbas M, Saftoiu A, Sahai AV, Sun S, Dong Y, Carrara S, Hwang JH, Jenssen C. Do we need elastography for EUS? *Endosc Ultrasound* 2020; **9**: 284-290 [PMID: 32675464 DOI: 10.4103/eus.eus_25_20]
5 **Yamashita Y**, Tanioka K, Kawaji Y, Tamura T, Nuta J, Hatamaru K, Itonaga M, Yoshida T, Ida Y, Maekita T, Iguchi M, Kitano M. Utility of Elastography with Endoscopic Ultrasonography Shear-Wave Measurement for Diagnosing Chronic Pancreatitis. *Gut Liver* 2020; **14**: 659-664 [PMID: 31722469 DOI: 10.5009/gnl19170]
6 **Costache MI**, Cazacu IM, Dietrich CF, Petrone MC, Arcidiacono PG, Giovannini M, Bories E, Garcia JI, Siyu S, Santo E, Popescu CF, Constantin A, Bhutani MS, Saftoiu A. Clinical impact of strain histogram EUS elastography and contrast-enhanced EUS for the differential diagnosis of focal pancreatic masses: A prospective multicentric study. *Endosc Ultrasound* 2020; **9**: 116-121 [PMID: 32295969 DOI: 10.4103/eus.eus_69_19]
7 **Dietrich CF**, Barr RG, Farrokh A, Dighe M, Hocke M, Jenssen C, Dong Y, Saftoiu A, Havre RF. Strain Elastography - How To Do It? *Ultrasound Int Open* 2017; **3**: E137-E149 [PMID: 29226273 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-119412]
8 **Conti CB**, Weiler N, Casazza G, Schrecker C, Schneider M, Mücke MM, Queck A, Herrmann E, Conte D, Colombo M, Zeuzem S, Fraquelli M, Friedrich-Rust M. Feasibility and reproducibility of liver and pancreatic stiffness in patients with alcohol-related liver disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2019; **51**: 1023-1029 [PMID: 30658941 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2018.12.017]
9 **Kawada N**, Tanaka S, Uehara H, Ohkawa K, Yamai T, Takada R, Shiroeda H, Arisawa T, Tomita Y. Potential use of point shear wave elastography for the pancreas: a single center prospective study. *Eur J Radiol* 2014; **83**: 620-624 [PMID: 24445135 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2013.11.029]
10 **Ferraioli G**, Wong VW, Castera L, Berzigotti A, Sporea I, Dietrich CF, Choi BI, Wilson SR, Kudo M, Barr RG. Liver Ultrasound Elastography: An Update to the World Federation for Ultrasound in Medicine and Biology Guidelines and Recommendations. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2018; **44**: 2419-2440 [PMID: 30209008 DOI: 10.1016/j.ultrasmedbio.2018.07.008]
11 **Janssen J**, Schlörer E, Greiner L. EUS elastography of the pancreas: feasibility and pattern description of the normal pancreas, chronic pancreatitis, and focal pancreatic lesions. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **65**: 971-978 [PMID: 17531630 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2006.12.057]
12 **Mel Wilcox C**, Gress T, Boermeester M, Masamune A, Lévy P, Itoi T, Varadarajulu S, Irisawa A, Levy M, Kitano M, Garg P, Isaji S, Shimosegawa T, Sheel ARG, Whitcomb DC, Neoptolemos JP; International (IAP-APA-JPS-EPC) Consensus Guidelines for Chronic Pancreatitis. International consensus guidelines on the role of diagnostic endoscopic ultrasound in the management of chronic pancreatitis. Recommendations from the working group for the international consensus guidelines for chronic pancreatitis in collaboration with the International Association of Pancreatology, the American Pancreatic Association, the Japan Pancreas Society, and European Pancreatic Club. *Pancreatology* 2020; **20**: 822-827 [PMID: 32631791 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2020.05.025]

13 **Kuwahara T**, Hirooka Y, Kawashima H, Ohno E, Ishikawa T, Kawai M, Suhara H, Takeyama T, Hashizume K, Koya T, Tanaka H, Sakai D, Yamamura T, Furukawa K, Funasaka K, Nakamura M, Miyahara R, Watanabe O, Ishigami M, Hashimoto S, Goto H. Quantitative diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis using EUS elastography. *J Gastroenterol* 2017; **52**: 868-874 [PMID: 27995327 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-016-1296-8]

14 **Kuwahara T**, Hirooka Y, Kawashima H, Ohno E, Ishikawa T, Yamamura T, Furukawa K, Funasaka K, Nakamura M, Miyahara R, Watanabe O, Ishigami M, Hashimoto S, Goto H. Usefulness of shear wave elastography as a quantitative diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **33**: 756-761 [PMID: 28833507 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.13926]

15 **Iglesias-Garcia J**, Domínguez-Muñoz JE, Castiñeira-Alvariño M, Luaces-Regueira M, Lariño-Noia J. Quantitative elastography associated with endoscopic ultrasound for the diagnosis of chronic pancreatitis. *Endoscopy* 2013; **45**: 781-788 [PMID: 24019131 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1344614]

16 **Itoh Y**, Itoh A, Kawashima H, Ohno E, Nakamura Y, Hiramatsu T, Sugimoto H, Sumi H, Hayashi D, Kuwahara T, Morishima T, Funasaka K, Nakamura M, Miyahara R, Ohmiya N, Katano Y, Ishigami M, Goto H, Hirooka Y. Quantitative analysis of diagnosing pancreatic fibrosis using EUS-elastography (comparison with surgical specimens). *J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 1183-1192 [PMID: 24026103 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-013-0880-4]

17 **Yamashita Y**, Tanioka K, Kawaji Y, Tamura T, Nuta J, Hatamaru K, Itonaga M, Ida Y, Maekita T, Iguchi M, Kitano M. Endoscopic ultrasonography shear wave as a predictive factor of endocrine/exocrine dysfunction in chronic pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **36**: 391-396 [PMID: 32511808 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.15137]

18 **Domínguez-Muñoz JE**, Alvarez-Castro A, Lariño-Noia J, Nieto L, Iglesias-García J. Endoscopic ultrasonography of the pancreas as an indirect method to predict pancreatic exocrine insufficiency in patients with chronic pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2012; **41**: 724-728 [PMID: 22228053 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e31823b5978]

19 **Conti CB**, Cereatti F, Drago A, Grassia R. Focal Autoimmune Pancreatitis: A Simple Flow Chart for a Challenging Diagnosis. *Ultrasound Int Open* 2020; **6**: E67-E75 [PMID: 33490857 DOI: 10.1055/a-1323-4906]

20 **Dyrla P**, Gil J, Niemczyk S, Saracyn M, Kosik K, Czarkowski S, Lubas A. Elastography in the Diagnosis of Pancreatic Malignancies. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2019; **1133**: 41-48 [PMID: 30443726 DOI: 10.1007/5584_2018_303]

21 **Okasha HH**, Mahdy RE, Elkholy S, Hassan MS, El-Mazny AN, Hadad KEE, Saeed M, El-Nady M, Elbalky OS, Ashraf A, El-Magd AA, Awad A. Endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) elastography and strain ratio, could it help in differentiating malignant from benign pancreatic lesions? *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e11689 [PMID: 30200064 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000011689]

22 **Ishikawa T**, Kawashima H, Ohno E, Tanaka H, Maeda K, Sawada T, Yamamura T, Furukawa K, Nakamura M, Miyahara R, Ishigami M, Fujishiro M. Usefulness of Endoscopic Ultrasound Elastography Combined With the Strain Ratio in the Estimation of Treatment Effect in Autoimmune Pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2020; **49**: e21-e22 [PMID: 32049954 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000001481]

23 **Dawwas MF**, Taha H, Leeds JS, Nayar MK, Oppong KW. Diagnostic accuracy of quantitative EUS elastography for discriminating malignant from benign solid pancreatic masses: a prospective, single-center study. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2012; **76**: 953-961 [PMID: 22854060 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.05.034]

24 **Ying L**, Lin X, Xie ZL, Hu YP, Tang KF, Shi KQ. Clinical utility of endoscopic ultrasound elastography for identification of malignant pancreatic masses: a meta-analysis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **28**: 1434-1443 [PMID: 23731128 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12292]

25 **Zhang B**, Zhu F, Li P, Yu S, Zhao Y, Li M. Endoscopic ultrasound elastography in the diagnosis of pancreatic masses: A meta-analysis. *Pancreatology* 2018; **18**: 833-840 [PMID: 30093353 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2018.07.008]

26 **Mei M**, Ni J, Liu D, Jin P, Sun L. EUS elastography for diagnosis of solid pancreatic masses: a meta-analysis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2013; **77**: 578-589 [PMID: 23199646 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2012.09.035]

27 **Lu Y**, Chen L, Li C, Chen H, Chen J. Diagnostic utility of endoscopic ultrasonography-elastography in the evaluation of solid pancreatic masses: a meta-analysis and systematic review. *Med Ultrason* 2017; **19**: 150-158 [PMID: 28440348 DOI: 10.11152/mu-987]

28 **Chantarojanasiri T**, Hirooka Y, Kawashima H, Ohno E, Kuwahara T, Yamamura T, Funasaka K, Nakamura M, Miyahara R, Ishigami M, Watanabe O, Hashimoto S, Hirakawa A, Ratanachu-Ek T, Goto H. Endoscopic ultrasound in diagnosis of solid pancreatic lesions: Elastography or contrast-enhanced harmonic alone *vs* the combination. *Endosc Int Open* 2017; **5**: E1136-E1143 [PMID: 29124123 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-118829]

29 **Iglesias-Garcia J**, Larino-Noia J, Abdulkader I, Forteza J, Dominguez-Munoz JE. Quantitative endoscopic ultrasound elastography: an accurate method for the differentiation of solid pancreatic masses. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1172-1180 [PMID: 20600020 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.06.059]

30 **Ignee A**, Jenssen C, Arcidiacono PG, Hocke M, Möller K, Saftoiu A, Will U, Fusaroli P, Iglesias-Garcia J, Ponnudurai R, Petrone MC, Braden B, Burmester E, Dong Y, Atkinson NS, Dietrich CF. Endoscopic ultrasound elastography of small solid pancreatic lesions: a multicenter study. *Endoscopy* 2018; **50**: 1071-1079 [PMID: 29689572 DOI: 10.1055/a-0588-4941]

31 **Jafri M**, Sachdev AH, Khanna L, Gress FG. The Role of Real Time Endoscopic Ultrasound Guided Elastography for Targeting EUS-FNA of Suspicious Pancreatic Masses: A Review of the Literature and A Single Center Experience. *JOP* 2016; **17**: 516-524 [PMID: 28912670]

32 **Facciorusso A**, Martina M, Buccino RV, Nacchiero MC, Muscatiello N. Diagnostic accuracy of fine-needle aspiration of solid pancreatic lesions guided by endoscopic ultrasound elastography. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2018; **31**: 513-518 [PMID: 29991898 DOI: 10.20524/aog.2018.0271]

33 **Polkowski M**, Jenssen C, Kaye P, Carrara S, Deprez P, Gines A, Fernández-Esparrach G, Eisendrath P, Aithal GP, Arcidiacono P, Barthet M, Bastos P, Fornelli A, Napoleon B, Iglesias-Garcia J, Seicean A, Larghi A, Hassan C, van Hooft JE, Dumonceau JM. Technical aspects of endoscopic ultrasound (EUS)-guided sampling in gastroenterology: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) Technical Guideline - March 2017. *Endoscopy* 2017; **49**: 989-1006 [PMID: 28898917 DOI: 10.1055/s-0043-119219]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 918-932

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.918

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator prevents ischemia/reperfusion induced intestinal apoptosis *via* inhibiting PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway

Zhi-Wei Dong, Hui Liu, Fei-Fei Su, Xiao-Zhou Fan, Yong Zhang, Peng Liu

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: McDowell HR, Nardone G, Valery PC

Received: November 10, 2021
Peer-review started: November 10, 2021
First decision: December 3, 2021
Revised: December 14, 2021
Accepted: January 22, 2022
Article in press: January 22, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Zhi-Wei Dong, Department of General Surgery, Air Force Medical Center, Beijing 100000, China

Hui Liu, Department of Gastroenterology, Second Affiliated Hospital of Dalian Medical University, Dalian 116023, Liaoning Province, China

Fei-Fei Su, Department of Cardiology, Air Force Medical Center, Beijing 100000, China

Xiao-Zhou Fan, Department of Ultrasound, Air Force Medical Center, Beijing 100000, China

Yong Zhang, School of Chemistry and Biological Engineering, University of Science and Technology, Beijing 100000, China

Peng Liu, Research Laboratory of Aero-Medical Support, Air Force Medical Center, Beijing 100000, China

Corresponding author: Peng Liu, PhD, Research Scientist, Research Laboratory of Aero-Medical Support, Air Force Medical Center, No. 30 Fucheng Road, Haidian District, Beijing 100000, China. liupeng-81@foxmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Intestinal ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) injury is a fatal syndrome that occurs under many clinical scenarios. The apoptosis of intestinal cells caused by ischemia can cause cell damage and provoke systemic dysfunction during reperfusion. However, the mechanism of I/R-induced apoptosis remains unclear. Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) is a cAMP-activated chloride channel. Few researchers have paid attention to its role in intestinal I/R injury, or the relationship between CFTR and intestinal apoptosis induced by hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R).

AIM

To investigate the effects of CFTR on I/R-induced intestinal apoptosis and its underlying molecular mechanisms.

METHODS

An intestinal I/R injury model was established in mice with superior mesenteric

artery occlusion, and Caco2 cells were subjected to H/R for the simulation of I/R *in vivo*.

RESULTS

The results suggested that CFTR overexpression significantly increased the Caco2 cell viability and decreased cell apoptosis induced by the H/R. Interestingly, we found that the translocation of p65, an NF-κB member, from the cytoplasm to the nucleus after H/R treatment can be reversed by the overexpression of CFTR, the NF-κB P65 would return from the nucleus to the cytoplasm as determined by immunostaining. We also discovered that CFTR inhibited cell apoptosis in the H/R-treated cells, and this effect was significantly curbed by the NF-κB activator BA, AKT inhibitor GSK690693 and the PI3K inhibitor LY294002. Moreover, we demonstrated that CFTR overexpression could reverse the decreased PI3K/AKT expression induced by the I/R treatment *in vivo* or H/R treatment *in vitro*.

CONCLUSION

The results of the present study indicate that the overexpression of CFTR protects Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis; furthermore, it also inhibits H/R-induced apoptosis through the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway in H/R-treated Caco2 cells and intestinal tissues.

Key Words: Apoptosis; Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator; Intestinal ischemia-reperfusion injury; PI3K/AKT/NF-κB; Hypoxia/reoxygenation; Caco2 cells

Core Tip: Intestinal ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) injury is a fatal syndrome that occurs under many clinical scenarios. The apoptosis of intestinal cells caused by ischemia can cause cell damage and provoke systemic dysfunction during reperfusion. However, the mechanism of I/R-induced apoptosis remains unclear. In our paper, our data demonstrate that cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) is downregulated in hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R)-treated Caco2 cells, and overexpression of CFTR protects Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis. Additionally, CFTR is involved in inhibiting H/R-induced apoptosis, and it inhibits apoptosis through PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway. In all, this work suggests that overexpression of CFTR attenuates H/R-induced apoptosis through PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway in H/R-treated Caco2 cells.

Citation: Dong ZW, Liu H, Su FF, Fan XZ, Zhang Y, Liu P. Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator prevents ischemia/reperfusion induced intestinal apoptosis *via* inhibiting PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 918-932

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/918.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.918

INTRODUCTION

Intestinal ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) injury is a fatal syndrome that occurs in different critical clinical scenarios, including acute mesenteric ischemia, burn injury, sepsis, and hemorrhagic shock, and is characterized by high incidence and mortality rates[1]. Intestinal I/R causes local injuries in the intestine and multiple organ dysfunction syndromes or even multiple organ failure (MOF) in distant organs with a mortality rate ranging from 30%–90%[2]. The underlying mechanisms are very complex, including damage by oxygen radicals, the release of large numbers of inflammatory factors, bacterial translocation, and cell apoptosis. Protecting intestinal apoptosis is one of the critical targets in treating patients with intestinal I/R injury.

The innate and adaptive apoptosis resulting from intracellular damage and translocation of gut pathogens play a critical role in the pathological process of intestinal I/R[3]. The apoptosis of intestinal cells induced by ischemia can cause cell damage and activate epithelial barrier dysfunction during reperfusion, leading to system dysfunction[4]. However, the mechanism of apoptosis induced by H/R remains unclear.

Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR), a cAMP-activated chloride channel, mutations of which cause the most common lethal genetic disease[5]. Mutation in CFTR causes cystic fibrosis (CF) and induces severe damage to body organs, especially the lungs and digestive system. Extensive research on the role of CFTR has focused on epithelial cell function, while its role in other types of cells, such as endothelial cells, is largely unclear[6]. Many studies have indicated that patients

with CF had endothelial perturbation and microvascular dysfunction, suggesting that CFTR deficiency contributes to endothelial dysfunction[7]. Furthermore, CFTR protects against endothelial apoptosis from oxidative stress and inflammation[8]. However, the relationship between CFTR and I/R-induced apoptosis in enterocytes has not been reported.

It was reported that the activation of the NF-κB signaling pathway is involved in apoptosis, autophagy, and inflammatory gene transcription[1,9]. Moreover, NF-κB can be the target for disease treatment. Inhibition of NF-κB activation could attenuate LPS-induced apoptosis[1]. H/R stress was reported to trigger apoptosis by impairing NF-κB survival signaling in malignant B cells[10]. Additionally, the PI3K/AKT pathway is considered an essential regulatory factor in NF-κB activation. Conditional CFTR knockout mice showed increased inflammatory cell infiltration and activation of the NF-κB signaling pathway[4]. In endothelial cells, CFTR modulates inflammation by regulating the NF-κB signaling[11]. But how CFTR modulates PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling in apoptosis induced by H/R has not been fully elucidated.

It was hypothesized that CFTR could affect I/R-induced intestinal apoptosis through the NF-κB signaling pathway. In this study, a CFTR activator and CFTR overexpression vector were used to investigate the effects of CFTR on I/R-induced intestinal apoptosis and its underlying molecular mechanisms.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell culture

Caco2 cells purchased from American Type Culture Collection were maintained in a high-glucose DMEM medium (Gibco, Rockville, MD, United States) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (Gibco, Rockville, MD, United States), 100-U/mL penicillin, 100-mg/mL streptomycin (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, United States), and 5% CO_2 at 37 °C in a humidified atmosphere for 48 h. To mimic hypoxic conditions, the cells were incubated in a microaerophilic system (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Waltham, MA, United States) with 5% CO_2 and 1% O_2 balanced with 94% N_2 for 12 h. Then, the cells were cultured under normal conditions for 0, 12, 24, and 48 h to achieve reoxygenation.

For inhibitor treatment, the cells were incubated with NF-κB inhibitor BAY11 (40 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China), AKT activator IGF-1 (20 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China), PI3K activator (740 Y-P, 10 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China), NF-κB activator Betulinic acid (BA) (20 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China), AKT inhibitor GSK690693 (20 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China), and PI3K inhibitor LY294002 (10 μmol/L) (Beyotime, Nantong, China) for 1–8 h and then subjected to H/R. The cells were used for various experiments at different times after the H/R treatment.

Lentivirus transfection

To overexpress CFTR, Caco2 cells were transfected with the expression vector Human CFTR lentivirus (LV-CFTR), which was bought from Genechem Company (Shanghai Genechem Co., Ltd., Shanghai, China). The lentivirus was transfected into the Caco2 cells (80% confluence) at the multiplicity of infection (MOI) 20 before the experiment. After 6 h, the cell culture medium was replaced with a fresh medium, and the cells were used for the experiments 2 d later.

Cell viability assay

Cell counting kit-8 (CCK8; Dojindo Laboratories, Kumamoto, Japan) assay was employed to investigate cell survival following the manufacturer's instructions. In brief, Caco2 cells after various treatments were plated in 96-well plates at a density of 2.5 × 10^3 cells/well. On the other day, 15-μL CCK-8 was added to each well and incubated at 37 °C for 4 h. Absorbance was measured at 450 nm using a microplate spectrophotometer (Molecualr Devices LLC, Sunnyvale, CA, United States).

TUNEL

According to instruction, one-step TUNEL apoptosis assay kit (Beyotime, Nantong, China) was used to conduct TUNEL staining. The images of the FITC-labeled TUNEL-positive cells were captured using a fluorescence microscope (Nikon Corporation, Tokyo, Japan). The nick-ends labeled in red indicated apoptotic cells. The cell nucleus was labeled in blue using DAPI (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, United States).

Western blotting

Western blotting was conducted as previously described[11]. Briefly, total proteins were obtained from cultured Caco2 cells using RIPA (Beyotime, Nantong, China), and the concentrations were tested using the bicinchoninic acid (BCA) Protein Assay Kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL, United States). The intestinal tissues were taken and washed thrice with PBS, then stored at -80 °C. A 100-μg intestinal tissue was removed for the Western blotting using the same protocol used for the isolation of the cell protein; further, 50-μg protein was separated in 10% SDS-PAGE and transferred to PVDF membranes. The

membranes were blocked in 5% nonfat dry milk and then probed with mouse monoclonal anti-p-NF-κB p65 and anti-NF-κB p65 (1:2000 dilution, Cell Signaling Technology, Danvers, MA, United States), and rabbit anti-GAPDH (1:1000 dilution; Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Dallas, TX, United States) overnight at 4 °C. On the other day, membranes were then incubated with the HRP-conjugated anti-rabbit or goat anti-mouse secondary antibody (1:3000; Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Dallas, TX, United States) for 1 h at room temperature. The protein bands were visualized using Amersham Hyperfilm™ ECL (Thermo Fisher Scientific; former, MA, United States). ImageJ 1.41o software (National Institutes of Health (Bethesda, MD, United States) was used to quantify protein expression.

Intestinal I/R model and treatment

C57BL/6J mice aged 8–12 wk old were supplied by the Experimental Animal Center at the southwest hospital. All experimental procedures conformed to the institutional guidelines and protocols approved by the Animal Care and Use Committee of Air Force Medical Center. All animal studies complied with the principle for replacement, refinement, or reduction. The mice were randomly separated into five groups (n = 8): Sham and I/R groups (45 min of ischemia and reperfusion for 30, 90, 720, and 1440 min). All animals were group-housed with 2–3 mice *per* cage on a 12 h light/dark cycle in a temperature-controlled (25 °C ± 2 °C) room with free access to water and food. Before the experiment, all mice were fasted for 24 h, but the water was supplied. The animals were anesthetized with intraperitoneal injection, 1.0–1.25 g/kg 10% urethane in 0.9% saline (w/v) (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO, United States), and all mice were kept under anesthesia during the surgery period[12]. In the Sham group, the wound was closed after finding the superior mesenteric artery using laparotomy. In I/R groups, the abdominal cavity was opened, the superior mesenteric artery and its adjacent tissues were cautiously isolated and clamped using a microvascular clip for 45 min to induce ischemia, and then the clip was gently removed to allow reperfusion for 30, 90, 720, and 1440 min. After the procedure, the surgical incision was sutured with sutures. The mice were placed on a warming plate and sacrificed after the injury during the process. Then, the whole intestines were obtained and stored at -80 °C, which was used for the test[13]. FSK, an adenylate cyclase activator, was administered to activate the CFTR chloride channel for Con + FSK and I/R + FSK groups through intraperitoneal injection (2 mg/kg, Sigma-Aldrich, United States)[14].

Statistical analysis

The GraphPad Prism 7.0 statistical software (GraphPad Software, Inc., La Jolla, San Diego, CA, United States) was used for statistical analysis. Data are presented as mean ± SD. Multiple comparisons between more than two groups were analysed by one-way ANOVA test or Kruskal–Wallis test (non-parametric). $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Apoptosis was induced in Caco2 cells after H/R treatment

To investigate the effect of H/R injury on cell injuries, cell viability was examined in vitro. As shown in Figure 1A, after a reoxygenation period of 12 h and 24 h, cell viability decreased significantly compared with the control group, and returned to normal 48 h after reoxygenation. Meanwhile, as shown in Figure 1B, after the reoxygenation period, the percentage of apoptosis was elevated compared with the control group, and it also returned to normal 48 h after reoxygenation. The western blotting was used to test the cell apoptosis after H/R treatment. The results showed that the ratio of Bcl-2/Bax was significantly decreased at 12 h and 24 h, indicating that apoptosis was remarkably elevated by the H/R treatment (Figure 1C).

CFTR can protect the Caco2 cells from apoptosis induced by H/R

To explore the effect of CFTR on H/R-induced apoptosis, the expression of the CFTR protein before and after H/R was assessed using western blotting analysis of protein lysate from the H/R treatment Caco2 cells. The results indicated that CFTR proteins were detectable at high levels in the control group, while its level was remarkably downregulated 12 h and 24 h after reoxygenation (Figure 2A). To assess whether CFTR was responsible for altering the levels of apoptosis markers, the endogenous CFTR in Caco2 cells was increased by approximately 80% using the LV-CFTR. Infection of Caco2 cells with LV-CFTR 2 d before the experiment modestly increased CFTR levels compared with Caco2 cells infected with LV-NC (lentivirus expressed with empty vector). In addition, LV-CFTR also increased CFTR levels in Caco2 cells treated with H/R treatment (Figure 2B). Considering that the apoptosis reached its maximum at 12 h (Figure 1B and C), this time point was used to test the effect of CFTR on cell apoptosis. It was discovered that the CFTR overexpression significantly increased the viability of Caco2 cells induced by H/R treatments (Figure 2C), and Caco2 cells with high LV-CFTR expression had increased levels of Bcl-2/Bax ($P < 0.001$) compared to the control infected with LV-NC (Figure 2D). These results indicate that CFTR can protect the Caco2 cells from apoptosis induced by the H/R treatment.

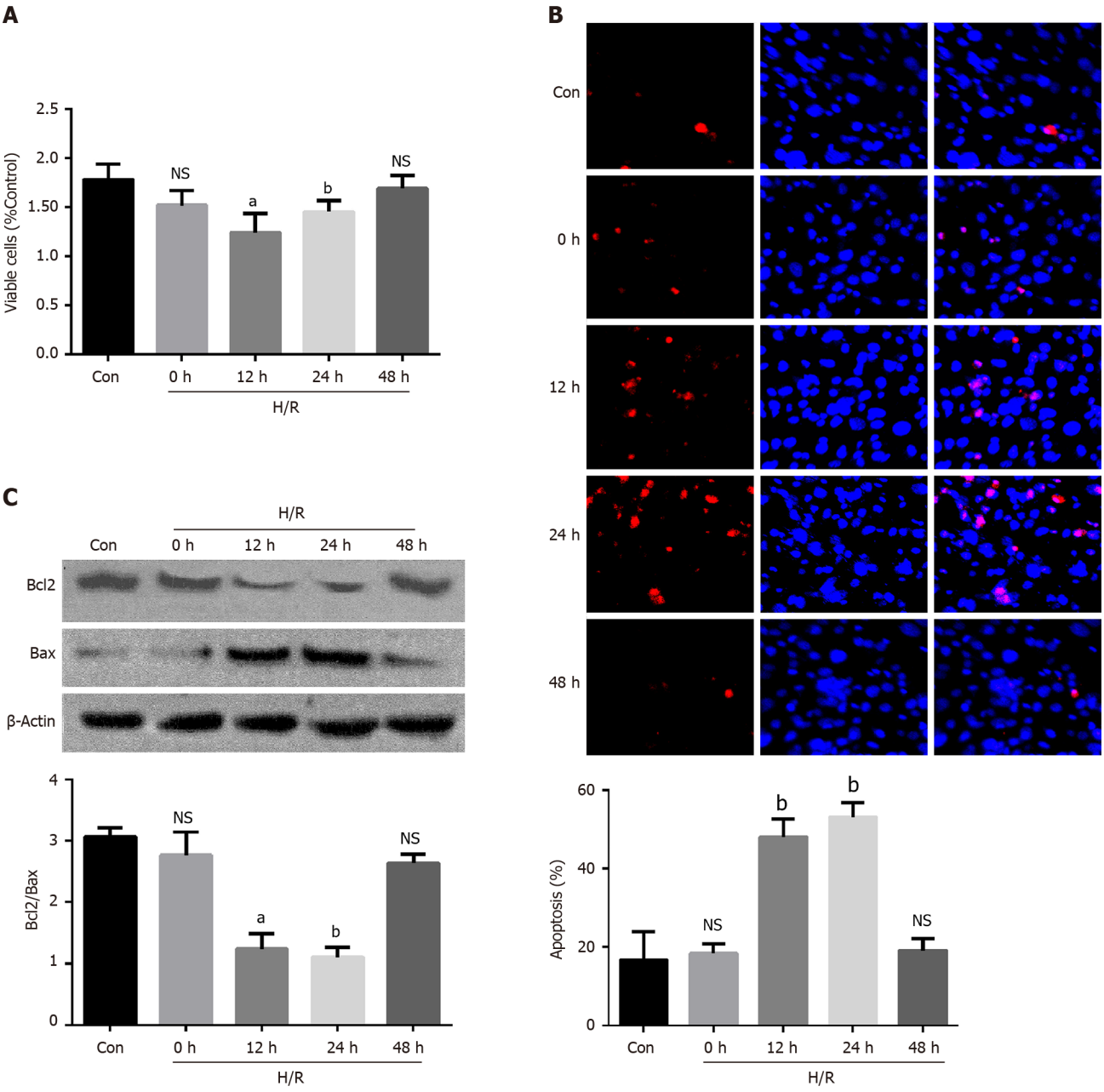


Figure 1 Apoptosis was induced in Caco2 cells after hypoxia/reoxygenation treatment. A: Cell viability was tested using the CCK8 kit on different times after the hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R) treatment, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); B: The quantification data of apoptosis tested by the TUNEL at different times after the H/R treatment, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); C: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2 and Bax at different times after the H/R treatment. Data are presented as mean ± SD, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$). NS: No significant difference; H/R: Hypoxia/reoxygenation.

PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway was involved in H/R-induced apoptosis

It has been reported that PI3K/AKT/NF-κB mediates the H/R injury in many physiological and pathological means, including apoptosis, inflammation, autophagy, *etc*. The effect of H/R on the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway was quantified in the Caco2 cells. As shown in Figure 3A, the protein expressions of PI3K, phosphorylated AKT^{ser473} (p-AKT^{ser473}), phosphorylated AKT^{Thr308} (p-AKT^{Thr308}) were decreased 12 h and 24 h after the H/R treatment, and returned to normal at 48 h; on the contrary, the activation of the NF-κB P65 was upregulated 12 h and 24 h after the H/R treatment. More importantly, H/R treatment provoked the translocation of p65, an NF-κB member, from the cytoplasm to the nucleus at 12 h and 24 h, as observed through immunofluorescence staining, and then returned to the cytoplasm at 48 h (Figure 3B). Furthermore, the cells were treated with NF-κB inhibitor BAY11 (40 μmol/L), AKT activator IGF-1(20 μmol/L), and PI3K activator (740 Y-P, 10 μmol/L) 6 h before the H/R experiment, apoptotic activity was checked 12 h after the H/R treatment. Interestingly, we discovered that NF-κB inhibitor, AKT activator, and PI3K activator could reverse the H/R-induced cell apoptosis (Figure 3C). Furthermore, the PI3K and AKT activator significantly decreased the NF-κB elevations induced by the

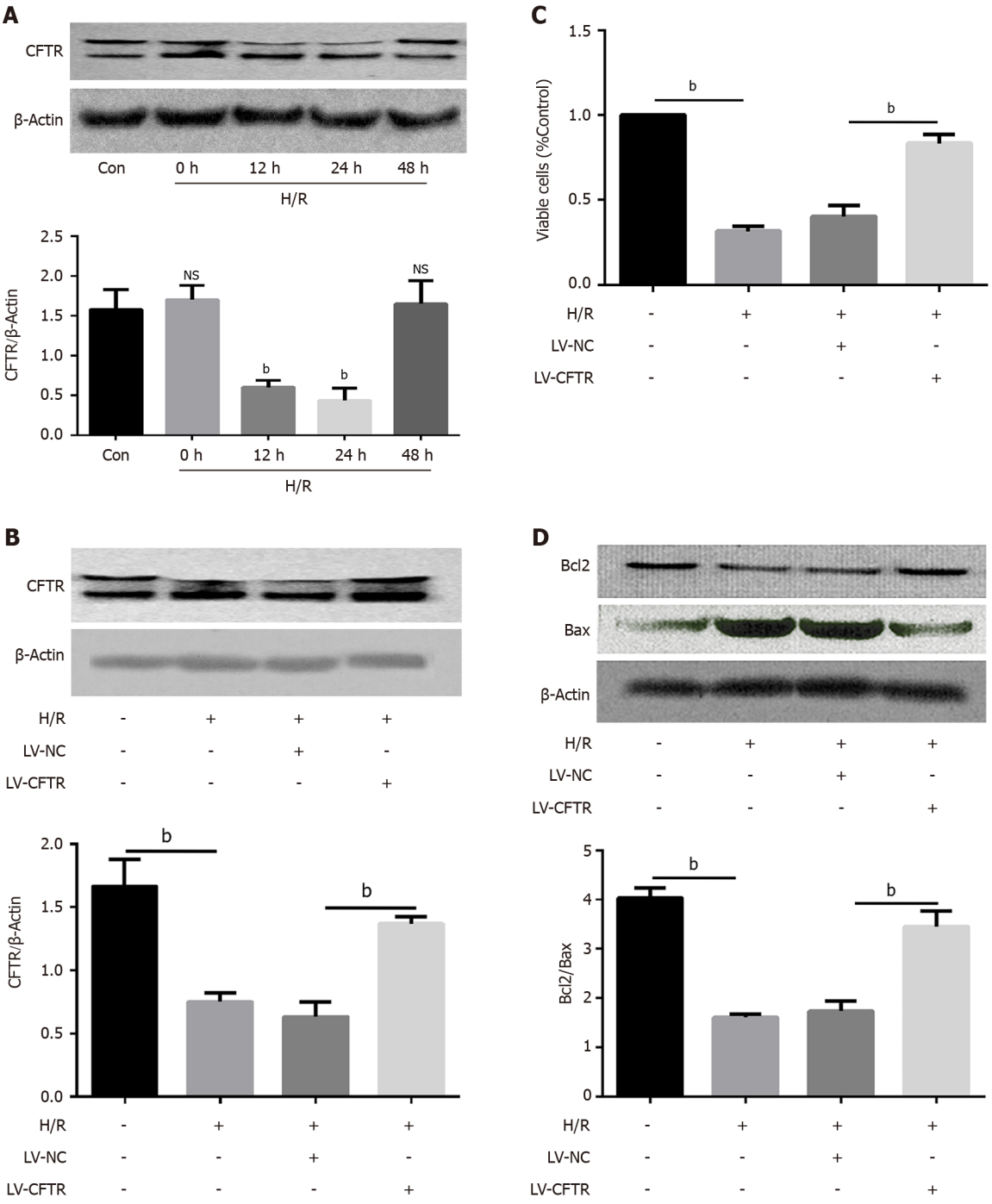
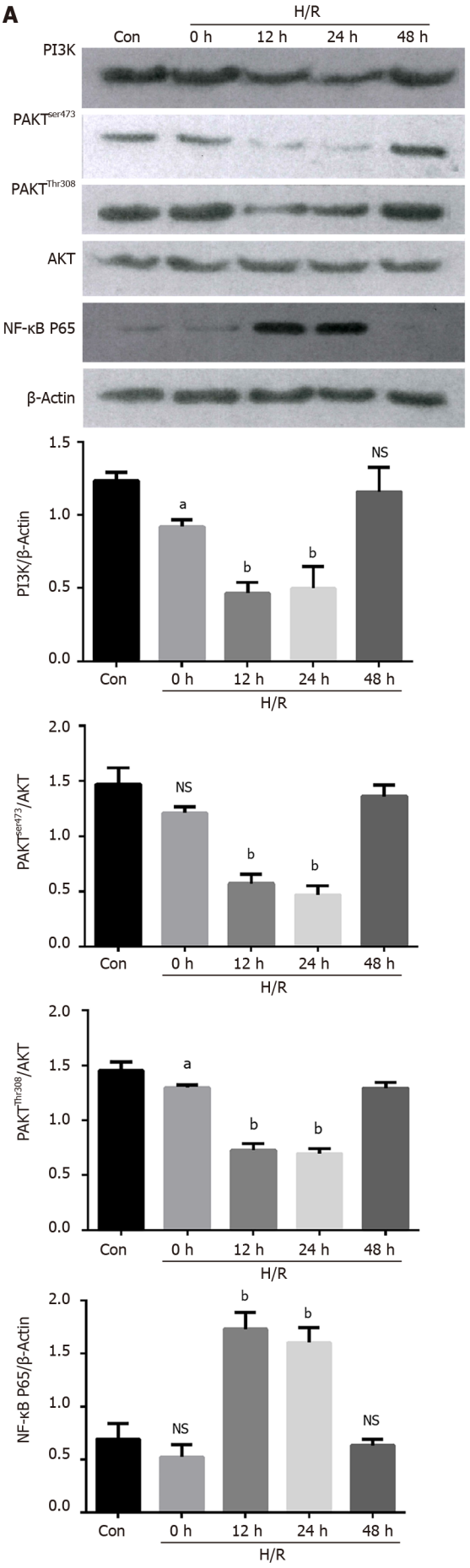


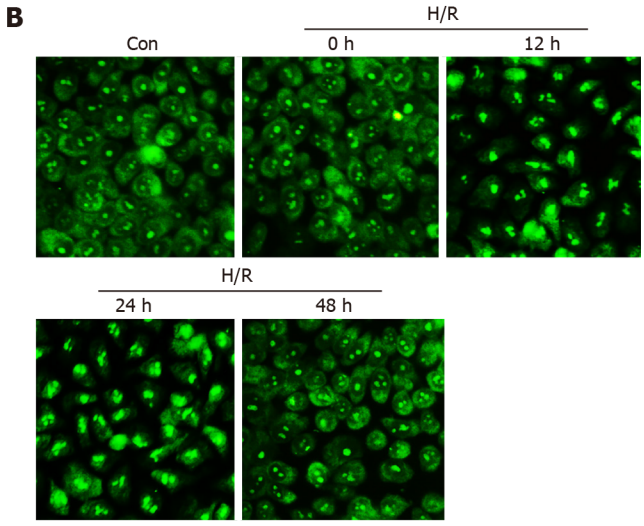
Figure 2 Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator can protect the Caco2 cells from apoptosis induced by the hypoxia/reoxygenation. A: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) after the hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R) treatment, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); B: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for CFTR after the LV-CFTR transfection, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); C: Cell viability was tested using the CCK8 kit after the LV-CFTR transfection, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); D: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2 and Bax after the LV-CFTR transfection. Data are presented as mean ± SD. $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$). CFTR: Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator; H/R: Hypoxia/reoxygenation.

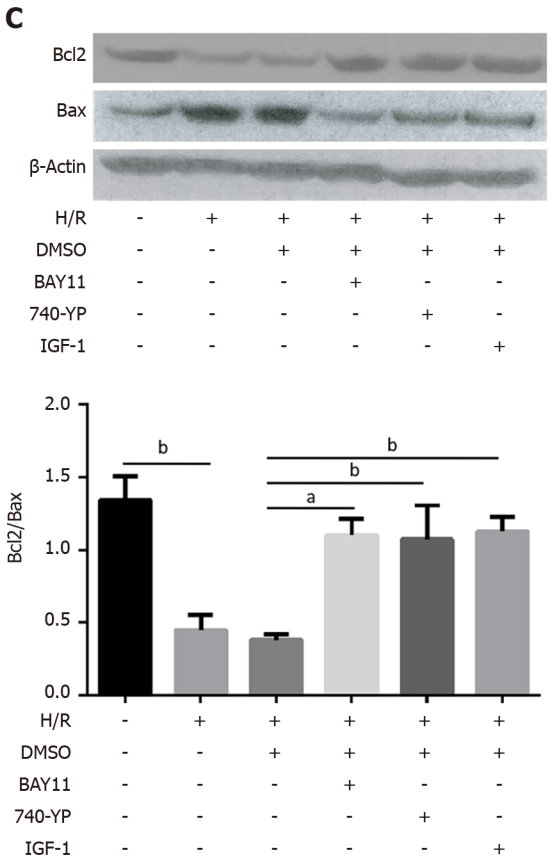
H/R (Figure 3D), whereas the NF-κB inhibitor could not impend the decline of PI3K and AKT in H/R-treated cells (Figure 3E), indicating that NF-κB was downstream of PI3K and AKT in the H/R-treated cells. All of these results suggested that PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway is involved in H/R-induced apoptosis.

CFTR protected the Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis through the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway

Previous research has established that CFTR can regulate PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway in tumor cell migration and cell permeability. To assess the relationship between CFTR and PI3K/AKT/NF-κB in H/R-induced apoptosis, CFTR was overexpressed and the H/R condition stimulated. Interestingly,


A
H/R
Con
0 h
12 h
24 h
48 h
PI3K
PAKTser473
PAKTThr308
AKT
NF-κB P65
β-Actin
PI3K/β-Actin
PAKTser473/AKT
PAKTThr308/AKT
NF-κB P65/β-Actin
NS
a
b


B
H/R
Con
0 h
12 h
24 h
48 h


C
Bcl2
Bax
β-Actin
H/R
DMSO
BAY11
740-YP
IGF-1
Bcl2/Bax
a
b

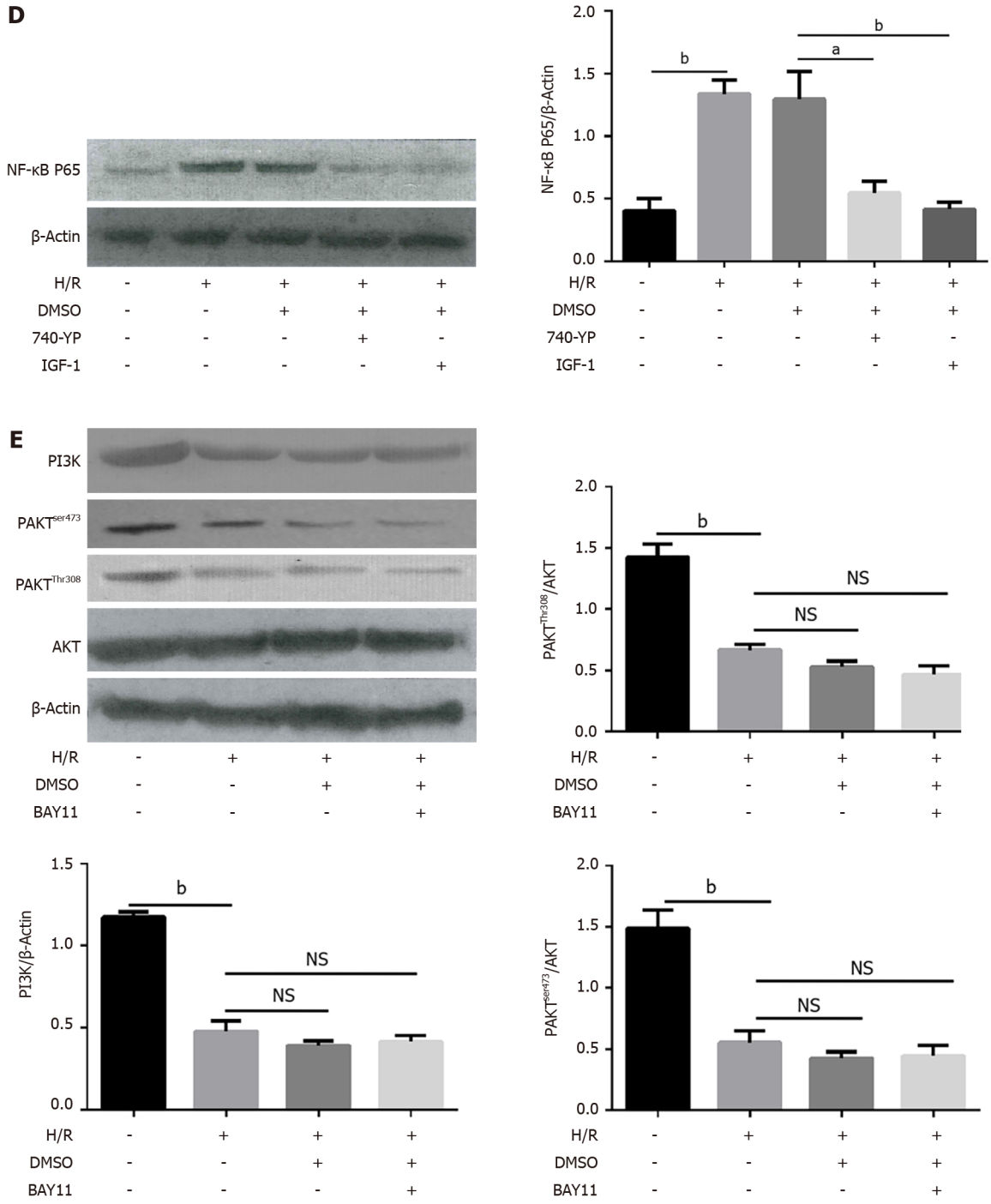


Figure 3 PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway was involved in hypoxia/reoxygenation-induced apoptosis. A: Representative western blotting and quantification data for PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, p-AKT^{Thr308}, NF-κB P65, and β-actin at different time points after hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R) treatment. ns, no significant difference, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); B: Representative images of immunofluorescence staining for NF-κB P65 in Caco2 cells before (Con) and after the H/R treatment at different time, Bars = 100-μm ($n = 3$); C: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2, and Bax after NF-κB inhibitor BAY11, AKT activator IGF-1 and PI3K activator 740 Y-P treatment, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); D: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for NF-κB P65 after AKT activator IGF-1 and PI3K activator 740 Y-P treatment, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); E: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, and p-AKT^{Thr308}, after NF-κB inhibitor BAY11 treatment. Data are presented as mean ± SD. $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$). NS: No significant difference.

compared with the H/R treatment groups, the overexpression of CFTR can inhibit the NF-κB P65 activation and instigate the return of NF-κB P65 from nuclei to the cytoplasm (Figure 4A). The results showed that overexpression of CFTR significantly limited the activation of the NF-κB p65 induced by the H/R treatment, and can also increase the PI3K/AKT expression (Figure 4B). Furthermore, cells were treated with NF-κB activator betulinic acid (BA) (20 μmol/L), AKT inhibitor GSK690693 (20 μmol/L), and PI3K inhibitor LY294002 (10 μmol/L) 6 h before the H/R treatment experiment. Our results implied that CFTR increased cell viability and inhibited cell apoptosis in the H/R-treated cells, and this effect was significantly inhibited by BA, GSK690693, and LY294002 (Figure 4C). Furthermore, results from

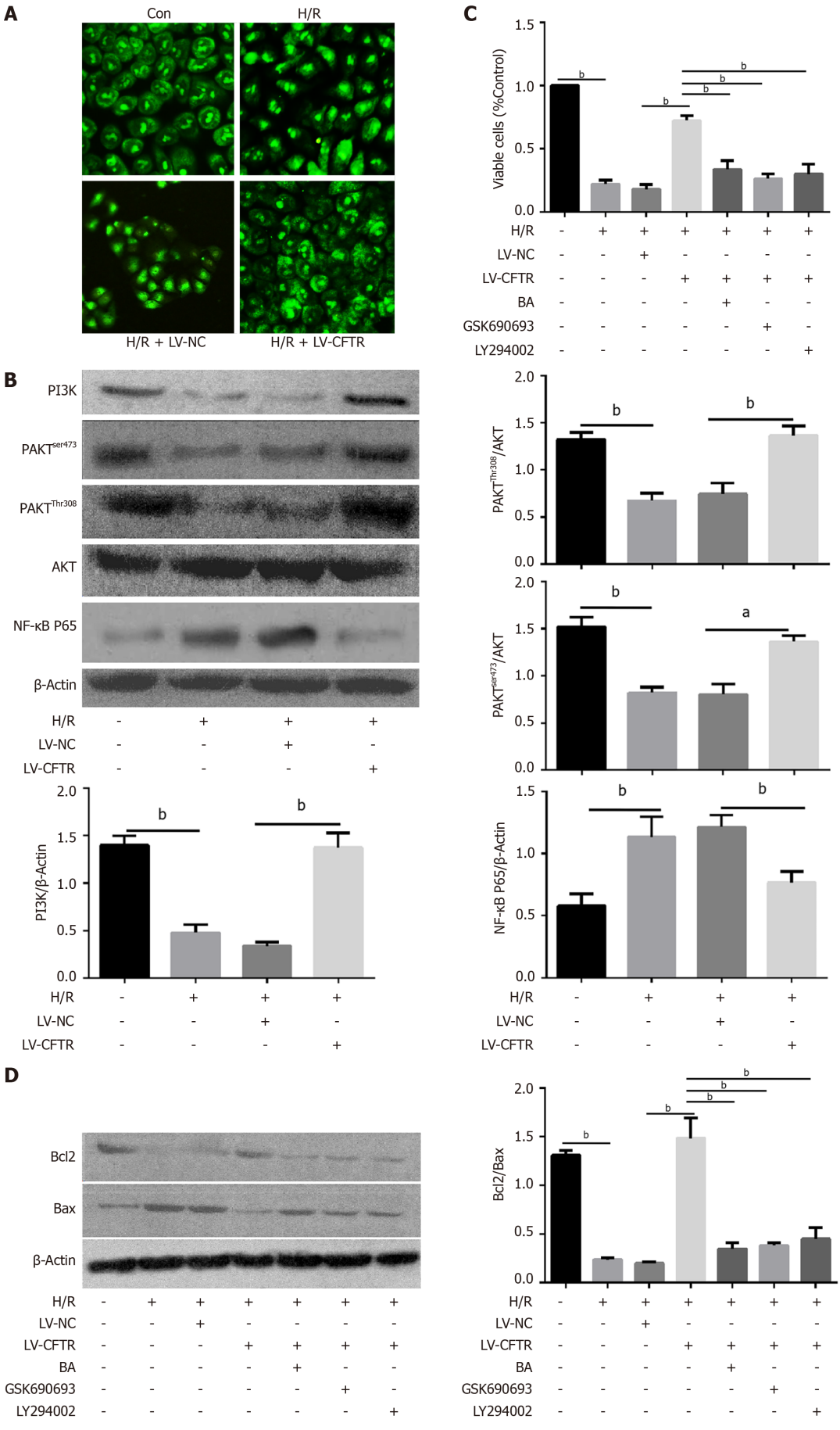


Figure 4 Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator protected the Caco2 cells from hypoxia/reoxygenation-induced apoptosis

by PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway. A: Representative images of immunofluorescence staining for NF-κB P65 in Caco2 cells after the LV-cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) transfection (n = 3); B: Representative western blotting and quantification data for PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, p-AKT^{Thr308}, and NF-κB P65 after LV-CFTR transfection, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control (n = 3); C: Cell viability was tested using the CCK8 kit after LV-CFTR transfection and treatment with NF-κB activator Betulinic acid (BA), AKT inhibitor GSK690693 and PI3K inhibitor LY294002, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control (n = 3); D: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2 and Bax after LV-CFTR transfection and treatment with NF-κB activator BA, AKT inhibitor GSK690693 and PI3K inhibitor LY294002. Data are presented as mean ± SD. $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control (n = 3).

western blotting showed that CFTR could not increase Bcl-2/Bax ration after BA, GSK690693, and LY294002 treatment (Figure 4D). Together, these results indicate that the inhibition of PI3K/AKT or the activation of NF-κB both impeded the protective effect of CFTR on H/R-induced apoptosis, and also demonstrate that CFTR protects the Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis by inhibiting the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway.

CFTR overexpression protects the intestinal cell from apoptosis induced by I/R via inhibiting the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway in vivo

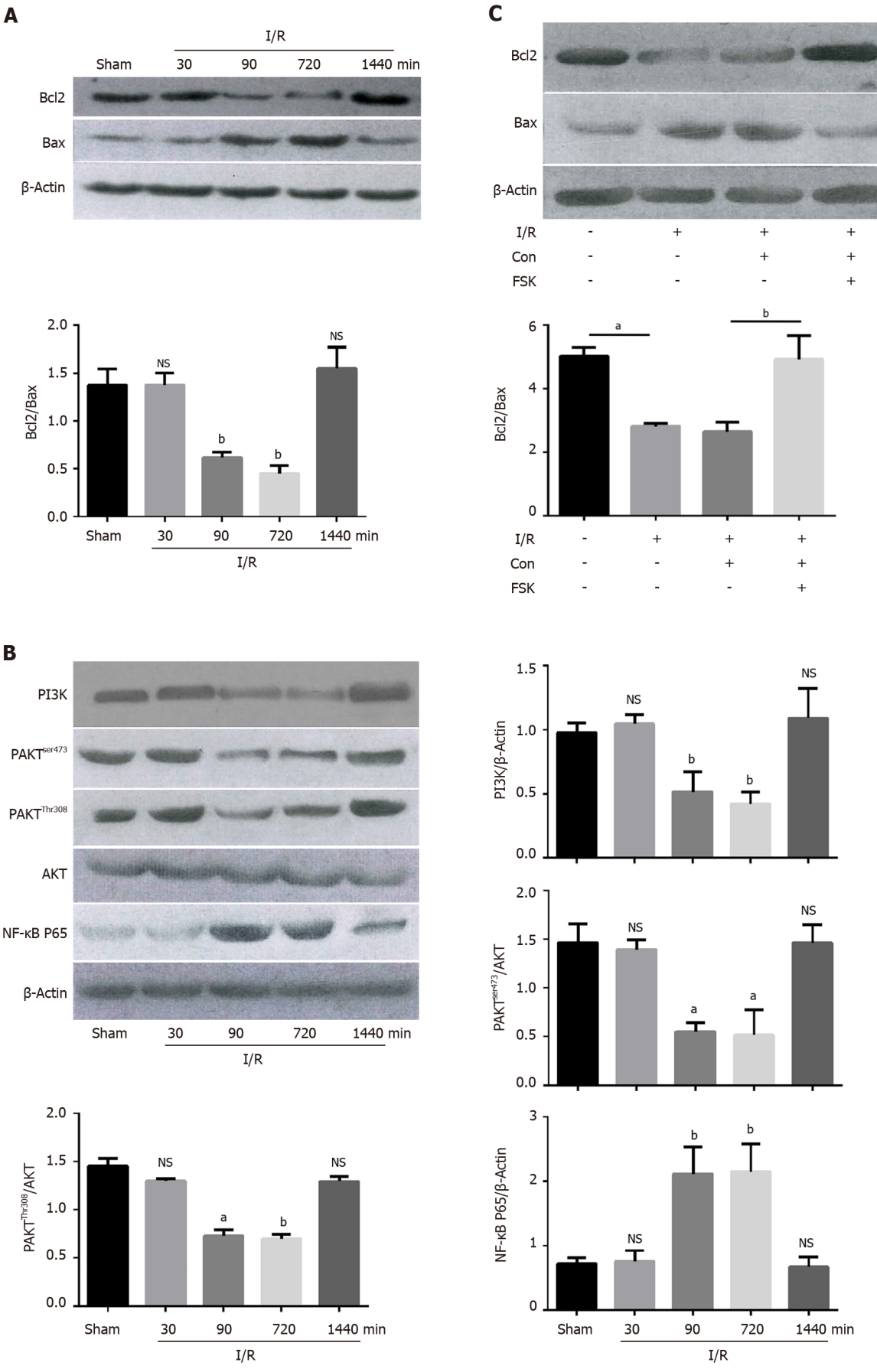
To assess whether the findings of CFTR in Caco2 cell lines were relevant to animal models *in vivo*, we performed the I/R-induced intestinal injury in animal models. Results from the western blotting demonstrated that the ratio of Bcl-2/Bax was significantly decreased at 90 min and 720 min, indicating that I/R treatment could significantly instigate apoptosis *in vivo* (Figure 5A), and the expressions of PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473} and p-AKT^{Thr308} were all decreased at 90 and 720 min, but they all returned to the normal level at 1440 min (Figure 5B). Similarly, the activation of the NF-κB P65 was increased at 90 and 720 min after the I/R treatment (Figure 5B). Furthermore, we treated the animals with the FSK, an activator of adenylate cyclase, and checked the apoptosis after I/R treatment. As shown in Figure 5C, the apoptosis of the intestines after FSK administration was significantly lower than those who received control treatment. The NF-κB was also activated in the I/R treatment and downregulated by the FSK administration. FSK administration could also increase the expression of PI3K and AKT, which was downregulated by I/R treatment (Figure 5D). To sum up, results indicate that CFTR can attenuate intestinal apoptosis in the I/R treatment model relating to the PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway.

DISCUSSION

To the best of our knowledge, this study is the first to investigate the possible involvement of CFTR, as an essential therapeutic target, in I/R injury. Additionally, it has been demonstrated that CFTR/PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway is the underlying signaling mechanism in the I/R-induced intestinal cell apoptosis.

I/R can cause intestinal mucosal injury, ultimately leading to bacterial translocation, sepsis, MOF, and eventually death[15,16]. I/R injury is caused by complex pathological damage with different factors involved. Early tissue ischemia could induce intestinal mucosal barrier dysfunction, while subsequent reperfusion could cause oxidative stress, cell apoptosis, and immune activation[1,5]. Many studies have shown that H/R can induce apoptosis and necrosis in various cell lines, including lymphocytes, blood cells, and cancer cells[12]. However, the sensitivity of different cell lines differ widely according to the H/R exposure[17]. In our study, the focus was on the effect of H/R on intestinal cells. After hypoxia, cell viability significantly reduced compared with the control group in the time point of 12 h and 24 h after reo-xygenation, and it returned to normal 48 h after reoxygenation. Meanwhile, after 12 h and 24 h of reoxygenation, the percentage of apoptosis increased compared with the control group, and it also returned to normal 48 h after reoxygenation, showing that apoptosis was remarkably elevated by the H/R treatment and the percentage of apoptosis relied on the time point after reoxygenation.

The effect of H/R stimulation on cells is multifaceted and holistic, including all intracellular biochemical reactions and intracellular structures. In the process of H/R, several physiological changes were induced after H/R treatment in the cell, such as the cytoskeleton, intracellular calcium concentration, HSP and mitochondrial, *etc.*[18]. Thus, it is necessary to investigate the primary mechanism of H/R-induced apoptosis in Caco2 cells, and it is vital to identify new targets for the therapy of intestinal injury. Activation of NF-κB controls multiple cellular processes and several molecules involved in apoptosis[19]. CFTR maintains NF-κB activation by inhibiting the degradation of kappa B kinase γ (IKKγ) inhibitor[20]. It was also reported that the phosphorylation of NF-κB p65 was reduced in CFTR knockdown mice[21]. A recent study on intestinal Caco2 cells also found that knockdown of CFTR significantly increased IκB phosphorylation compared to control cells under IL-1β stimulation[7]. Despite the well-demonstrated inverse relationship between CFTR and NF-κB activation in various experimental settings[22,23], the solid evidence linking CFTR mutation to aberrant NF-κB activation remains mysteriously missing. Moreover, most studies focus on the relationship between CFTR/NF-κB and apoptosis in lung epithelial injury[7,24]. And the role of CFTR and NF-κB in intestinal apoptosis caused by H/R remains unclear. In our study, the activation of NF-κB P65 was upregulated at 12 h and


A
I/R
Sham
30
90
720
1440 min
Bcl2
Bax
β-Actin
Bcl2/Bax
NS
b
I/R
C
Bcl2
Bax
β-Actin
I/R
Con
FSK
a
b
B
PI3K
PAKT ser473
PAKT Thr308
AKT
NF-κB P65
PI3K/β-Actin
PAKT ser473/AKT
PAKT Thr308/AKT
NF-κB P65/β-Actin

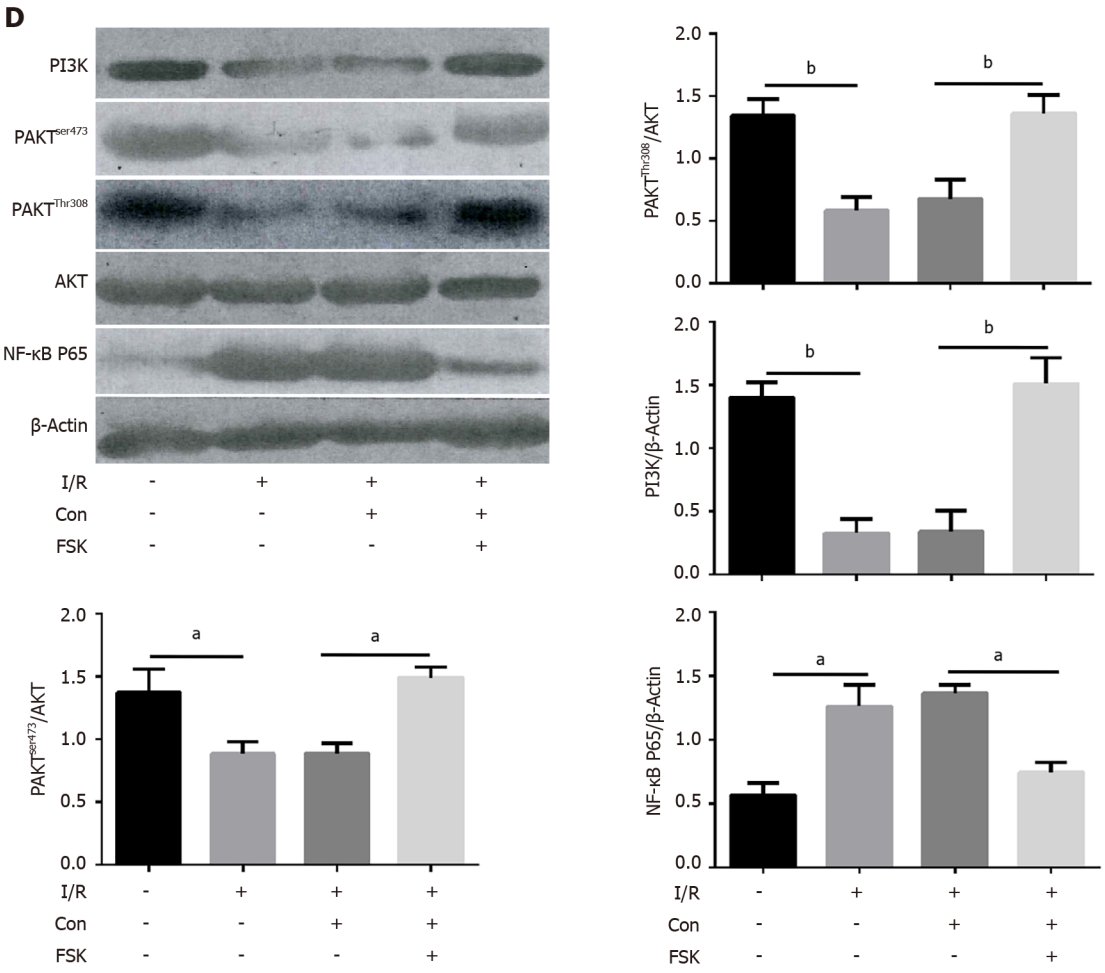


Figure 5 Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator protects the intestinal cell from apoptosis induced by ischemia/reperfusion by inhibiting PI3K/AKT/NF-κB pathway *in vivo*. A: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2 and Bax at different time after the ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) treatment, $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); B: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, p-AKT^{Thr308}, and NF-κB P65 at different time after I/R treatment, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); C: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for cell apoptotic proteins Bcl-2 and Bax after the FSK treatment in I/R treatment animal model, $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$); D: Representative Western blotting and quantification data for PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, p-AKT^{Thr308}, and NF-κB P65 after FSK treatment in the I/R treatment animal model. Data are presented as mean ± SD. $^{a}P < 0.01$ and $^{b}P < 0.001$ *vs* control ($n = 3$).

24 h after the H/R treatment. And H/R treatment provoked the translocation of p65 from the cytoplasm to the nucleus at 12 h and 24 h, as observed through immunofluorescence staining, and then returned to the cytoplasm at 48 h. Additionally, NF-κB inhibitor BAY11 could reduce the apoptotic activity induced by the H/R treatment. And CFTR overexpression could inhibit the NF-κB P65 activation and make the NF-κB p65 come back from the nucleus to the cytoplasm. These results indicated that overexpression of CFTR significantly limited the activation of the NF-κB p65, which was caused by the H/R treatment.

PI3K/AKT plays a role in inducing inflammation, oxidative stress, and apoptosis in tissue injuries[15, 25]. The key signaling molecule of PI3K is Akt[26]. Previous studies have observed the correlation of CFTR with PI3K/AKT pathway in both physiological and pathological conditions. Aberrant activity of AKT has been observed in CF cells and mice. For instance, the macrophages obtained from CF mice shed a significant decrease in AKT phosphorylation at serine 473 compared with those obtained from wild-type mice after LPS challenge, which might contribute to the extravagant inflammatory response manifested by CF mice. Accordingly, insulin-induced activation of Akt1 and Akt2 signaling was diminished in human airway epithelia expressing F508del-CFTR compared with wild-type CFTR cells. In this study, the protein expressions of PI3K, p-AKT^{ser473}, and p-AKT^{Thr308} were reduced at 12 h and 24 h after the H/R treatment and returned to normal at 48 h. Interestingly, it was discovered that the AKT activator and PI3K activator could reverse the H/R-induced cell apoptosis. The results indicated that overexpression of CFTR can significantly enhance the PI3K/AKT expression in the H/R-induced apoptosis. Our results implied that CFTR increased cell viability and inhibited cell apoptosis in the H/R-treated cells, and BA, GSK690693, and LY294002 significantly inhibited this effect. Altogether, based on our findings and previous studies, these results indicate that the inhibition of PI3K/AKT or the activation of NF-κB both impedes the protective effect of CFTR on H/R-induced apoptosis and showed that CFTR protects the Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis through the PI3K/AKT and

NF-κB pathway.

Since the above experiments seemed to indicate that PI3K/AKT and NF-κB are involved in the same signaling pathway, we proceeded to test the relationship between PI3K/AKT and NF-κB activation. Recent studies have confirmed that the PI3K/AKT pathway reduces nuclear translocation of p65[27,28]. But some studies have shown that AKT overexpression increases NF-κB-dependent gene expression[2, 29]. In our study, it was found that PI3K/AKT is upstream of NF-κB in H/R-induced response since PI3K inhibitor can abrogate the elevation of NF-κB P65 induced by H/R, whereas NF-κB inhibitor does not affect the activation of PI3K/AKT. And it was also found that activation of PI3K/AKT is sooner than that of NF-κB after H/R treatment was detected using Western blotting, supporting the notion that PI3K/AKT is the upstream of NF-κB. Additionally, the H/R-induced apoptosis can be reversed through PI3K/AKT or NF-κB inhibitor alone, with no additive effect if treated in combination, suggesting that PI3K/AKT and NF-κB are on the same pathway.

Although this study has achieved certain results, there are some limitations. First, we use an immortal human intestinal epithelial cell instead of primary cells, which limits the research's authenticity and reliability to a certain extent. Second, the simulated hypoxic environment *in vitro* may be different from the real intestinal ischemia-reperfusion. However, the mechanism of ischemia-reperfusion affecting intestinal barrier permeability is complex, including the activity of inflammatory cytokines, endotoxemia of mitochondria or endoplasmic reticulum, and congenital immune dysfunction, which may become the mutual network of cellular pathways. Thus, further research is needed to clarify this mechanism.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, our data demonstrate that CFTR is downregulated in H/R-treated Caco2 cells, and overexpression of CFTR protects Caco2 cells from H/R-induced apoptosis. Additionally, CFTR is involved in inhibiting H/R-induced apoptosis, and it inhibits apoptosis through PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway. In all, this work suggests that overexpression of CFTR attenuates H/R-induced apoptosis through PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway in H/R-treated Caco2 cells.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Intestinal ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) causes local injuries in the intestine and multiple organ dysfunction syndromes or even multiple organ failure in distant organs with a mortality rate ranging from 30%–90%. The underlying mechanisms are very complex. preventing intestinal apoptosis is one of the critical targets in treating patients with intestinal I/R injury.

Research motivation

Exploring the mechanism of apoptosis in intestinal I/R injury and preventing intestinal apoptosis is one of the critical targets in treating patients with intestinal I/R injury.

Research objectives

To apoptosis and its mechanism.

Research methods

An intestinal I/R injury model was established in mice with superior mesenteric artery occlusion, and Caco2 cells were subjected to hypoxia/reoxygenation (H/R) for the simulation of I/R *in vivo*.

Research results

Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) overexpression significantly increased the Caco2 cell viability and decreased cell apoptosis induced by the H/R. And CFTR overexpression could reverse the decreased PI3K/AKT expression induced by the I/R treatment *in vivo* or H/R treatment *in vitro*.

Research conclusions

Overexpression of CFTR attenuates H/R-induced apoptosis through PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway in H/R-treated Caco2 cells.

Research perspectives

CFTR/PI3K/AKT/NF-κB signaling pathway is potential mechanism to protect intestinal cell from apoptosis in intestinal I/R injury and critical targets in treating patients with intestinal I/R injury.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Dong ZW and Liu H contributed equally to this study; Dong ZW, Liu H and Liu P designed the research; Su FF, Fan XZ, and Zhang Y conducted experiments and analyzed the data; Dong ZW and Liu H wrote the manuscript; Liu P revised the manuscript; all authors approved the final version of the article.

Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81800473; and "Young Eagle Project "of Air Force Medical University, No. KT2021DX007.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of Air Force Medical Center.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All animal experiments conformed to the internationally accepted principles for the care and use of laboratory animals, No. 2020-43-YJ01.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All other authors have nothing to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

ARRIVE guidelines statement: The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Zhi-Wei Dong 0000-0001-7009-9331; Hui Liu 0000-0003-4721-560X; Fei-Fei Su 0000-0001-9816-1491; Xiao-Zhou Fan 0000-0002-8280-4146; Yong Zhang 0000-0001-9650-4294; Peng Liu 0000-0002-8063-6214.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Li X

REFERENCES

1 **Wu MB**, Ma B, Zhang TX, Zhao K, Cui SM, He SC. Propofol improves intestinal ischemia-reperfusion injury in rats through NF-κB pathway. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2020; **24**: 6463-6469 [PMID: 32572944 DOI: 10.26355/eurrev_202006_21545]
2 **Wang Z**, Sun R, Wang G, Chen Z, Li Y, Zhao Y, Liu D, Zhao H, Zhang F, Yao J, Tian X. SIRT3-mediated deacetylation of PRDX3 alleviates mitochondrial oxidative damage and apoptosis induced by intestinal ischemia/reperfusion injury. *Redox Biol* 2020; **28**: 101343 [PMID: 31655428 DOI: 10.1016/j.redox.2019.101343]
3 **Gonzalez LM**, Moeser AJ, Blikslager AT. Animal models of ischemia-reperfusion-induced intestinal injury: progress and promise for translational research. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2015; **308**: G63-G75 [PMID: 25414098 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00112.2013]
4 **Zhang S**, Shrestha CL, Wisniewski BL, Pham H, Hou X, Li W, Dong Y, Kopp BT. Consequences of CRISPR-Cas9-Mediated CFTR Knockout in Human Macrophages. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 1871 [PMID: 32973772 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.01871]
5 **Wu Z**, Li J, Zhang Y, Hu L, Peng X. CFTR Regulates the Proliferation, Migration and Invasion of Cervical Cancer Cells by Inhibiting the NF-κB Signalling Pathway. *Cancer Manag Res* 2020; **12**: 4685-4697 [PMID: 32606960 DOI: 10.2147/CMAR.S252296]
6 **Zhao M**, Zhang J, Huang W, Dong J, Guo J, U KP, Weng Z, Liu S, Chan HC, Feng H, Jiang X. CFTR promotes malignant glioma development *via* up-regulation of Akt/Bcl2-mediated anti-apoptosis pathway. *J Cell Mol Med* 2020; **24**: 7301-7312 [PMID: 32463592 DOI: 10.1111/jcmm.15300]
7 **Xu X**, Huang H, Yin X, Fang H, Shen X. Effect of lentivirus-mediated CFTR overexpression on oxidative stress injury and inflammatory response in the lung tissue of COPD mouse model. *Biosci Rep* 2020; **40** [PMID: 31894837 DOI: 10.1042/bsr20193667]
8 **Liu J**, Ou C, Zhu X, Tan C, Xiang X, He Y. Potential role of CFTR in bisphenol A-induced malignant transformation of prostate cells *via* mitochondrial apoptosis. *Toxicol Ind Health* 2020; **36**: 531-539 [PMID: 32729384 DOI: 10.1177/0748233720943750]
9 **Zhao P**, Li F, Gao W, Wang J, Fu L, Chen Y, Huang M. Angiotensin1-7 protects cardiomyocytes from hypoxia/reoxygenation-induced oxidative stress by preventing ROS-associated mitochondrial dysfunction and activating the Akt signaling pathway. *Acta Histochem* 2015; **117**: 803-810 [PMID: 26251197 DOI: 10.1016/j.acthis.2015.07.004]
10 **Liu M**, Liao H, Chen Y, Lin Z, Liu Y, Zhang X, Chan HC, Sun H. Treatment of human T-cell acute lymphoblastic

leukemia cells with CFTR inhibitor CFTRinh-172. *Leuk Res* 2019; **86**: 106225 [PMID: 31541940 DOI: 10.1016/j.leukres.2019.106225]

11 **Li J**, Liu S. LncRNA GAS5 suppresses inflammatory responses and apoptosis of alveolar epithelial cells by targeting miR-429/DUSP1. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2020; **113**: 104357 [PMID: 31837322 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2019.104357]

12 **Dai Y**, Mao Z, Han X, Xu Y, Xu L, Yin L, Qi Y, Peng J. MicroRNA-29b-3p reduces intestinal ischaemia/reperfusion injury *via* targeting of TNF receptor-associated factor 3. *Br J Pharmacol* 2019; **176**: 3264-3278 [PMID: 31167039 DOI: 10.1111/bph.14759]

13 **Hu Y**, Tao X, Han X, Xu L, Yin L, Sun H, Qi Y, Xu Y, Peng J. MicroRNA-351-5p aggravates intestinal ischaemia/reperfusion injury through the targeting of MAPK13 and Sirtuin-6. *Br J Pharmacol* 2018; **175**: 3594-3609 [PMID: 29952043 DOI: 10.1111/bph.14428]

14 **Zhang YP**, Zhang Y, Xiao ZB, Zhang YB, Zhang J, Li ZQ, Zhu YB. CFTR prevents neuronal apoptosis following cerebral ischemia reperfusion *via* regulating mitochondrial oxidative stress. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2018; **96**: 611-620 [PMID: 29761302 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-018-1649-2]

15 **Zheng L**, Han X, Hu Y, Zhao X, Yin L, Xu L, Qi Y, Xu Y, Liu K, Peng J. Dioscin ameliorates intestinal ischemia/reperfusion injury *via* adjusting miR-351-5p/MAPK13-mediated inflammation and apoptosis. *Pharmacol Res* 2019; **139**: 431-439 [PMID: 30503840 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2018.11.040]

16 **Du J**, Fan X, Yang B, Chen Y, Liu KX, Zhou J. Irisin pretreatment ameliorates intestinal ischemia/reperfusion injury in mice through activation of the Nrf2 pathway. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2019; **73**: 225-235 [PMID: 31108387 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2019.05.011]

17 **Lin ZL**, Yu WK, Tan SJ, Duan KP, Dong Y, Bai XW, Xu L, Li N. Protective effects of terminal ileostomy against bacterial translocation in a rat model of intestinal ischemia/reperfusion injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 17905-17913 [PMID: 25548488 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i47.17905]

18 **Schofield ZV**, Wu MCL, Hansbro PM, Cooper MA, Woodruff TM. Acetate protects against intestinal ischemia-reperfusion injury independent of its cognate free fatty acid 2 receptor. *FASEB J* 2020; **34**: 10418-10430 [PMID: 32725930 DOI: 10.1096/fj.202000960R]

19 **Piao X**, Liu B, Sui X, Li S, Niu W, Zhang Q, Shi X, Cai S, Fan Y. Picroside II Improves Severe Acute Pancreatitis-Induced Intestinal Barrier Injury by Inactivating Oxidative and Inflammatory TLR4-Dependent PI3K/AKT/NF-*κ*B Signaling and Improving Gut Microbiota. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2020; **2020**: 3589497 [PMID: 32351672 DOI: 10.1155/2020/3589497]

20 **Dong ZW**, Chen J, Ruan YC, Zhou T, Chen Y, Tsang LL, Chan HC, Peng YZ. CFTR-regulated MAPK/NF-κB signaling in pulmonary inflammation in thermal inhalation injury. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 15946 [PMID: 26515683 DOI: 10.1038/srep15946]

21 **Crites KS**, Morin G, Orlando V, Patey N, Cantin C, Martel J, Brochiero E, Mailhot G. CFTR Knockdown induces proinflammatory changes in intestinal epithelial cells. *J Inflamm (Lond)* 2015; **12**: 62 [PMID: 26549988 DOI: 10.1186/s12950-015-0107-y]

22 **Liu K**, Zhang X, Zhang JT, Tsang LL, Jiang X, Chan HC. Defective CFTR- β-catenin interaction promotes NF-κB nuclear translocation and intestinal inflammation in cystic fibrosis. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 64030-64042 [PMID: 27588407 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.11747]

23 **Chen J**, Chen Y, Yang Z, You B, Ruan YC, Peng Y. Epidermal CFTR Suppresses MAPK/NF-κB to Promote Cutaneous Wound Healing. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2016; **39**: 2262-2274 [PMID: 27832634 DOI: 10.1159/000447919]

24 **Bodas M**, Min T, Vij N. Critical role of CFTR-dependent lipid rafts in cigarette smoke-induced lung epithelial injury. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2011; **300**: L811-L820 [PMID: 21378025 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.00408.2010]

25 **Liu B**, Piao X, Niu W, Zhang Q, Ma C, Wu T, Gu Q, Cui T, Li S. Kuijieyuan Decoction Improved Intestinal Barrier Injury of Ulcerative Colitis by Affecting TLR4-Dependent PI3K/AKT/NF-κB Oxidative and Inflammatory Signaling and Gut Microbiota. *Front Pharmacol* 2020; **11**: 1036 [PMID: 32848725 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2020.01036]

26 **Xu H**, Wang Y, Jurutka PW, Wu S, Chen Y, Cao C, Chen G, Tian B, Wang S, Cheng S. 16α-Hydroxytrametenolic Acid from *Poria cocos* Improves Intestinal Barrier Function Through the Glucocorticoid Receptor-Mediated PI3K/Akt/NF-κB Pathway. *J Agric Food Chem* 2019; **67**: 10871-10879 [PMID: 31517482 DOI: 10.1021/acs.jafc.9b04613]

27 **Radwan RR**, Karam HM. Resveratrol attenuates intestinal injury in irradiated rats *via* PI3K/Akt/mTOR signaling pathway. *Environ Toxicol* 2020; **35**: 223-230 [PMID: 31633274 DOI: 10.1002/tox.22859]

28 **Khedr RM**, Ahmed AAE, Kamel R, Raafat EM. Sitagliptin attenuates intestinal ischemia/reperfusion injury *via* cAMP/PKA, PI3K/Akt pathway in a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor-dependent manner. *Life Sci* 2018; **211**: 31-39 [PMID: 30195035 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2018.09.013]

29 **Losa D**, Köhler T, Bellec J, Dudez T, Crespin S, Bacchetta M, Boulanger P, Hong SS, Morel S, Nguyen TH, van Delden C, Chanson M. Pseudomonas aeruginosa-induced apoptosis in airway epithelial cells is mediated by gap junctional communication in a JNK-dependent manner. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 4804-4812 [PMID: 24733844 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301294]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 933-947

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Sex-based differences in histology, staging, and prognosis among 2983 gastric cancer surgery patients

Yonghoon Choi, Nayoung Kim, Ki Wook Kim, Hyeong Ho Jo, Jaehyung Park, Hyuk Yoon, Cheol Min Shin, Young Soo Park, Dong Ho Lee, Hyeon Jeong Oh, Hye Seung Lee, Young Suk Park, Sang-Hoon Ahn, Yun-Suhk Suh, Do Joong Park, Hyung-Ho Kim, Ji-Won Kim, Jin Won Kim, Keun-Wook Lee, Won Chang, Ji Hoon Park, Yoon Jin Lee, Kyoung Ho Lee, Young Hoon Kim

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Xu JB, Yu F

Received: September 19, 2021
Peer-review started: September 19, 2021
First decision: November 7, 2021
Revised: November 8, 2021
Accepted: January 27, 2022
Article in press: January 27, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Yonghoon Choi, Nayoung Kim, Ki Wook Kim, Hyeong Ho Jo, Jaehyung Park, Hyuk Yoon, Cheol Min Shin, Young Soo Park, Dong Ho Lee, Ji-Won Kim, Jin Won Kim, Keun-Wook Lee, Department ofInternal Medicine, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam 13620, South Korea

Nayoung Kim, Dong Ho Lee, Keun-Wook Lee, Department of Internal Medicine, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul 03080, South Korea

Hyeon Jeong Oh, Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam 13620, South Korea

Hye Seung Lee, Department of Pathology, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul 03080, South Korea

Young Suk Park, Sang-Hoon Ahn, Yun-Suhk Suh, Hyung-Ho Kim, Department of Surgery, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam 13620, South Korea

Yun-Suhk Suh, Do Joong Park, Hyung-Ho Kim, Department of Surgery, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul 03080, South Korea

Won Chang, Ji Hoon Park, Yoon Jin Lee, Kyoung Ho Lee, Young Hoon Kim, Department of Radiology, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam 13620, South Korea

Kyoung Ho Lee, Young Hoon Kim, Department of Radiology, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul 03080, South Korea

Corresponding author: Nayoung Kim, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Internal Medicine, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, 82, Gumi-ro 173 Beon-gil, Bundang-gu, Seongnam 13620, South Korea. nakim49@snu.ac.kr

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Few studies have been conducted on sex differences in the incidence, pathophysiology, and prognosis of gastric cancer (GC).

AIM
To analyze the differences in GC characteristics according to sex in patients who underwent surgical treatment for GC.

METHODS
A total of 2983 patients diagnosed with gastric adenocarcinoma who received surgical treatment at the Seoul National University Bundang Hospital between 2003 and 2017 were included. Baseline clinicopathological characteristics, histologic type of GC, overall and GC-specific survival rates, and associated risk factors were analyzed.

RESULTS
Among the 2983 patients, 2005 (67.2%) and 978 (32.8%) were males and females, respectively. The average age of the female group (59.36 years) was significantly younger than that of the male group (61.66 years; $P < 0.001$). Cancer of the gastric body ($P < 0.001$) and diffuse-type histology ($P < 0.001$) were more common in females than in males. This trend was more prominent in females younger than 60 years of age, with a significantly higher proportion of diffuse-type cancer than in the male group. Regardless of sex, diffuse-type GC was more common in younger patients, and the proportion of intestinal-type GC increased with age. The overall survival rate was significantly higher in females ($P < 0.001$). However, this difference disappeared for GC-specific survival ($P = 0.168$), except for the poor GC-specific survival rate in advanced-stage cancer (stage III or above) in females ($P = 0.045$). The risk factors for GC-related mortality were older age, upper location of GC, and diffuse- or mixed-type histology. In terms of comorbidities, more males died from diseases other than GC, including other malignancies such as lung cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, and pancreatic cancer, and respiratory diseases such as interstitial lung disease and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, while there were relatively more cardiovascular or cerebrovascular deaths in females.

CONCLUSION
Sex-based differences in GC were observed in clinicopathological features, including age at diagnosis, tumor location, histologic type, survival rate, and comorbidities.

Key Words: Gastric cancer; Histology; Prognosis; Sex difference; Survival

Core Tip: In the analyses of sex differences in gastric cancer (GC), the sex ratio between males and females was 2:1, but the incidence of diffuse-type cancer was higher in females until the age of 60 years. The average age of the female group was significantly younger, and cancer of the gastric body and diffuse-type histology were more common than those in the males. In addition, there was poor GC-specific survival rate in advanced-stage cancer in females, while comorbidities including cancers of other organs and respiratory diseases were more common in males.

Citation: Choi Y, Kim N, Kim KW, Jo HH, Park J, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, Lee DH, Oh HJ, Lee HS, Park YS, Ahn SH, Suh YS, Park DJ, Kim HH, Kim JW, Kim JW, Lee KW, Chang W, Park JH, Lee YJ, Lee KH, Kim YH. Sex-based differences in histology, staging, and prognosis among 2983 gastric cancer surgery patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 933-947
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/933.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is the fifth most common cancer and the third most common cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide[1]. Age-standardized incidence rates are approximately twice as high in males than in females[2]. Major risk factors for developing GC include *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection, family history of GC, dietary habits, ionizing radiation, smoking, alcohol, and pernicious anemia, and the difference in incidence between males and females is likely due to the difference in exposure to these risk factors[3-5]. However, these factors alone do not fully explain the different characteristics of GC between the sexes. Recent research has revealed the role of sex hormones in various diseases and the resulting sex differences. It is well known that sex differences exist in the location and prognosis of

various cancers, including colorectal cancer[6,7], renal cell carcinoma[8], and bladder cancer[9]. In addition, sex differences are also known in central nervous system diseases such as cognitive disorders, Alzheimer's disease[10], Parkinson's disease[11], and autoimmune diseases[12]. However, the role of sex hormones such as testosterone and estrogen in the etiology, response to therapy, and survival of patients with GC, and the involved mechanisms and pathways remain unclear. Also, few studies to date have detailed the epidemiological and prognostic differences in GC between males and females.

Lauren classification is an independent prognostic factor in patients with GC[13]. That is, intestinal-type GC shows better clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis than diffuse-type GC. Diffuse-type cancer exhibits a higher recurrence rate than intestinal-type cancer, and the clinical appearance and survival of mixed-type cancers are known to be similar to those of diffuse-type GC[14]. Environmental factors reportedly play an important role in the development of intestinal-type versus diffuse-type GC [15]. There is also a sex-based difference in the histologic type of GC. That is, there is a marked predominance of older age and male sex in intestinal-type GC and a younger female predominance in diffuse-type GC. Younger female patients seem to exhibit a higher percentage of diffuse-type GC, resulting in more aggressive tumor behavior[14]; therefore, treatment methods may vary according to the Lauren type[16]. From this point of view, we hypothesized that an accurate analysis of sex-based differences in GC is possible in a well-designed surgical cohort with regular follow-up observations, clear histologic results, accurate information on family history, and social history such as smoking and alcohol consumption. Based on this background, the aim of this study was to analyze the sex-based differences in clinicopathological features and staging in GC, and to investigate prognostic factors including survival and death.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study population

Initially, 3074 patients aged > 18 years were selected from a prospective surgical cohort of patients who were diagnosed with gastric adenocarcinoma and underwent surgical treatment at Seoul National University Bundang Hospital (SNUBH) between 2003 and 2017 (Figure 1). Analyses of the effects of *H. pylori* eradication treatment, P53 overexpression and the incidence of metachronous GC in this cohort were previously published by our team[17-19]. The following patients were excluded: those with incomplete medical records or unclassified histology, who were lost to follow-up, had a prior history of other cancers at the time of diagnosis, or those who had other diseases with inoperable severity were excluded from the study. Finally, 2983 patients were included in the analysis (Figure 1). The medical records of these patients, including sex, age, death (including cause), histologic type of cancer, and social history such as alcohol consumption, smoking, and family history of GC were collected from surgical and medical cohorts, and reviewed using the Clinical Data Warehouse. The dates and causes of death of the enrolled patients were cross-reviewed with data from the National Statistical Office for verification.

Statistical analysis

The outcomes were overall survival and GC-specific survival. Univariate and multivariate Cox proportional hazards analyses were used to identify risk factors, and variables with a P value < 0.2 in the univariate analyses, were used as covariates for the multivariate analysis. The Kaplan–Meier estimator method and log-rank tests were used to compare survival. Analyses were performed using IBM SPSS Statistics software (version 25.0; IBM Corp., Armonk, NY, United States). Statistical significance was set at $P < 0.05$. All data are available upon request from the corresponding author.

Ethical considerations

The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of SNUBH (IRB No. B-1902–523-107) and registered at clinicaltrials.gov (NCT03978481). All authors have access to the study data and have approved the final manuscript.

RESULTS

Baseline clinicopathological characteristics

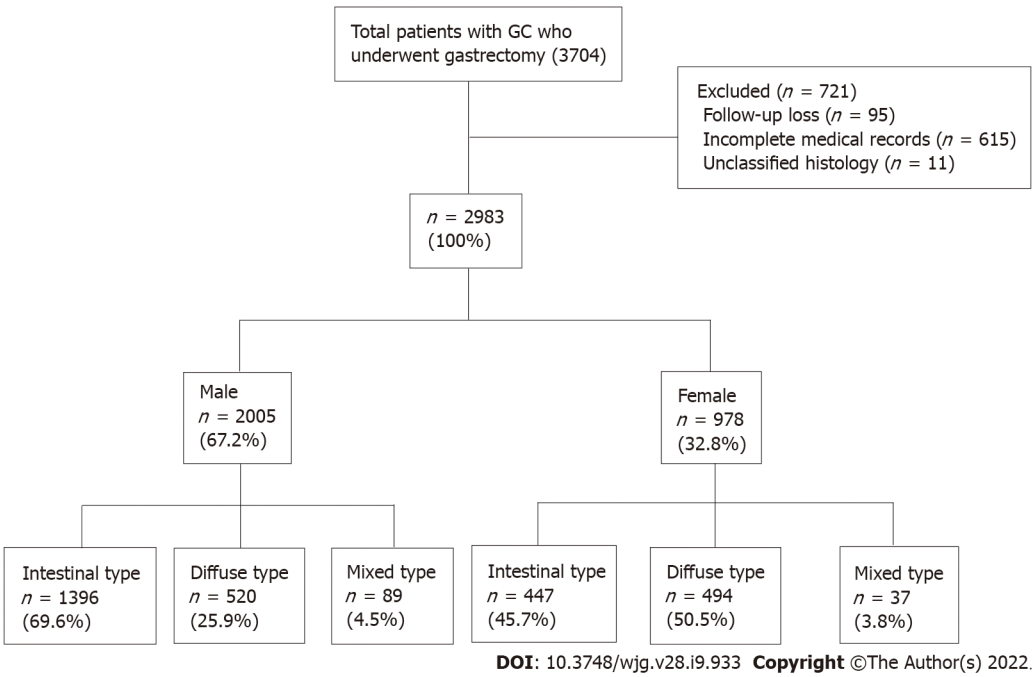
The baseline clinicopathological features of the subjects are shown in Table 1. Of the 2983 patients, 2005 were males and 978 were females, indicating a 2:1 sex ratio, with an average age of 61.66 for males and 59.36 for females, indicating a significantly younger onset age in females ($P < 0.001$). A higher proportion of males had a history of alcohol consumption and smoking (drinking history, $P < 0.001$; smoking history, $P < 0.001$). Cancer of the gastric body and diffuse-type cancer were more common in females (tumor location, $P < 0.001$; histologic type, $P < 0.001$, respectively). Overexpression of P53 was more common in males than in females ($P < 0.001$). There were no differences in family history, cancer

Table 1 Clinicopathological features of patients with gastric cancer

Characteristics	Total (*N* = 2983)	Female (*n* = 978)	Male (*n* = 2005)	*P* value
Age (yr, mean ± SD)	60.91 ± 12.31	59.36 ± 13.47	61.66 ± 11.63	< 0.001[a]
Drinking history, *n* (%)				
No	1631 (54.7)	790 (80.8)	841 (41.9)	< 0.001[a]
Yes	1352 (45.3)	188 (19.2)	1164 (58.1)	
Smoking history, *n* (%)				
No	1645 (55.1)	902 (92.2)	743 (37.1)	< 0.001[a]
Yes	1338 (44.9)	76 (7.8)	1262 (62.9)	
Family history, *n* (%)				
No	2467 (82.7)	803 (82.1)	1664 (83.0)	0.548
Yes	516 (17.3)	175 (17.9)	341 (17.0)	
Tumor location, *n* (%)				
Upper	77 (2.6)	19 (2.0)	58 (2.9)	< 0.001[a]
Middle	1332 (44.6)	497 (50.8)	835 (41.6)	
Lower	1574 (52.8)	462 (47.2)	1112 (55.5)	
Atrophic gastritis, *n* (%)				
No	2162 (72.5)	751 (76.8)	1411 (70.4)	< 0.001[a]
Yes	821 (27.5)	227 (23.2)	594 (29.6)	
Intestinal metaplasia, *n* (%)				
No	1680 (56.3)	560 (57.3)	1120 (55.9)	0.469
Yes	1303 (43.7)	418 (42.7)	885 (44.1)	
T stage, *n* (%)				
T1	2134 (71.5)	696 (71.2)	1438 (71.7)	0.669
T2	330 (11.1)	102 (10.4)	228 (11.4)	
T3	420 (14.1)	144 (14.7)	276 (13.8)	
T4	99 (3.3)	36 (3.7)	63 (3.1)	
N stage, *n* (%)				
N0	2215 (74.3)	696 (71.2)	1519 (75.7)	0.014[a]
N1	423 (14.2)	163 (16.7)	260 (13.0)	
N2	174 (5.8)	66 (6.7)	108 (5.4)	
N3	171 (5.7)	53 (5.4)	118 (5.9)	
Stage, *n* (%)				
I	2312 (77.5)	743 (76.0)	1569 (78.3)	0.189
II	405 (13.6)	151 (15.4)	254 (12.7)	
III	212 (7.1)	69 (7.1)	143 (7.1)	
IV	54 (1.8)	15 (1.5)	39 (1.9)	
Cancer type, *n* (%)				
EGC	2133 (71.5)	696 (71.2)	1437 (71.7)	0.774
AGC	850 (28.5)	282 (28.8)	568 (28.3)	
Histologic type, *n* (%) (Lauren classification)				
Intestinal	1843 (61.8)	447 (45.7)	1396 (69.6)	< 0.001[a]
Diffuse	1014 (34.0)	494 (50.5)	520 (25.9)	

Mixed	126 (4.2)	37 (3.8)	89 (4.5)	
H. pylori status, *n* (%)				
Negative	1267 (42.5)	379 (38.8)	888 (44.3)	0.004[a]
Positive	1716 (57.5)	599 (61.2)	1117 (55.7)	
P53, *n* (%)				
Negative	1917 (64.3)	706 (72.2)	1211 (60.4)	< 0.001[a]
Positive	1066 (35.7)	272 (27.8)	794 (39.6)	

[a]*P* < 0.05 indicates statistical significance. SD: Standard deviation; EGC: Early gastric cancer; AGC: Advanced gastric cancer; *H. pylori*: *Helicobacter pylori*.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

Figure 1 Study flow chart of patient enrollment and exclusion process. GC: Gastric cancer.

staging, or *H. pylori* infection at the time of diagnosis between males and females (family history, P = 0.548; cancer stage, P = 0.189; and *H. pylori* status, P = 0.062, respectively).

Differences in cancer histology by sex and age

To identify the histological changes in GC by age, the entire group of patients was divided into groups of under 40, 40-49, 50-59, 60-69, and 70+ years, and the trend of an increasing percentage of intestinal-type cancers with age, in both males and females, was noted (Supplementary Table 1). Considering the number of patients and histological ratios, there were more female patients under the age of 40 years and older male patients (Supplementary Figure 1). A higher number of female GC patients were under 40 years of age, while diffuse-type cancer was more common in both males and females than the other histological types (Figure 2). Among the male patients, the proportion of intestinal-type cancer increased steeply from age 50 years, whereas in female patients, the proportion of diffuse-type cancer remained high at 50-59 years of age (Figure 2). The ratio of intestinal- and diffuse-type GC in females approximately 20 years after menopause was similar to that of male patients aged ≥ 70 years (Figure 2).

Meanwhile, a significant correlation was observed between histological type and GC location, with a high ratio of diffuse-type cancer and stomach body cancer in females and a high ratio of intestinal-type cancer and stomach antral cancer in males (Pearson correlation analysis, P < 0.001).

Overall and cancer-specific survival

A statistically significant female predominance was identified in overall survival (P < 0.001), while a non-significant male predominance was identified in GC-specific survival (Figure 3). Increasing age, proximal tumor location, and diffuse- or mixed-type histology were identified as risk factors for GC-related morbidity (Table 2). In terms of cancer stage, there were no significant differences in patients

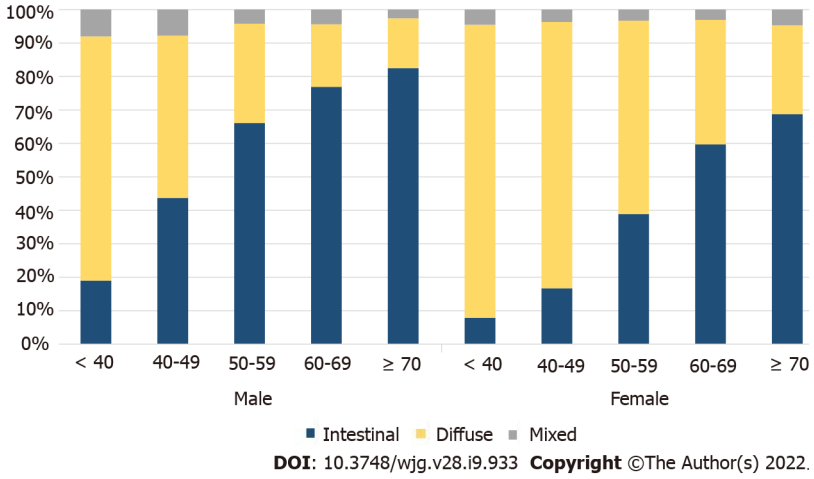
Table 2 Univariate and multivariate analyses for gastric cancer related morbidity

Variable	Univariate analysis	*P* value	Multivariate analysis	*P* value
Sex				
Male	Ref	0.169	Ref	0.672
Female	1.22 (0.92-1.61)		1.06 (0.80-1.42)	
Age				
< 60	Ref	0.001[a]	Ref	< 0.001[a]
≥ 60	1.64 (1.23-2.18)		2.02 (1.50-2.73)	
Drinking history				
No	Ref	0.996		
Yes	1.00 (0.76-1.32)			
Smoking history				
No	Ref	0.283		
Yes	1.16 (0.88-1.53)			
Family history				
No	Ref	0.189	Ref	0.165
Yes	0.77 (0.51-1.14)		0.75 (0.51-1.12)	
Tumor location				
Upper	Ref	0.003[a]	Ref	< 0.001[a]
Middle	1.65 (0.41-6.71)		1.40 (0.34-5.71)	
Lower	2.61 (0.65-10.54)		2.63 (0.65-10.64)	
Atrophic gastritis				
No	Ref	0.871		
Yes	0.97 (0.71-1.34)			
Intestinal metaplasia				
No	Ref	0.412		
Yes	0.89 (0.67-1.18)			
Histologic type (Lauren classification)				
Intestinal	Ref	< 0.001[a]	Ref	< 0.001[a]
Diffuse	2.16 (1.62-2.89)		3.07 (2.25-4.19)	
Mixed	2.25 (1.29-3.92)		2.50 (1.43-4.35)	
P53				
Negative	Ref	0.651		
Positive	1.07 (0.80-1.42)			

[a]$P < 0.05$ indicates statistical significance.
$P < 0.2$ were used for multivariable analyses.

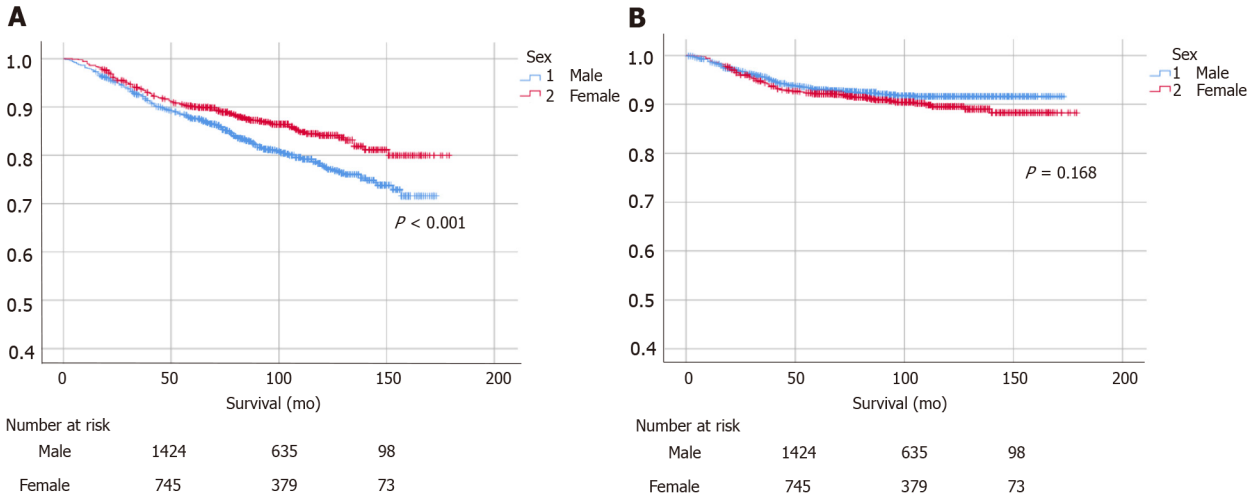
with stage I or II GC, whereas a statistically significant male predominance was observed in patients with advanced-stage cancer (stage III or above, $P = 0.045$; Figure 4). Histologically, patients with intestinal-type GC had a significantly higher survival rate than those with diffuse-type GC, and there were no statistically significant differences between males and females in intestinal- or diffuse-type GC (Supplementary Figure 2).

In the assessment of comorbidities, we investigated sex-based causes of death. Patients with a prior history of other cancers at the time of diagnosis or having severe diseases with inoperable conditions were excluded from the study, as mentioned above. Among the patients, 453 died including 135 males (6.7%) and 86 females (8.8%) died of GC. Significantly more males died from diseases other than GC (193 males and 39 females). In males, there were more deaths from malignancies such as lung cancer,



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

Figure 2 Proportion of histological types of gastric cancer according to sex and age. The trend of an increasing proportion of intestinal-type cancers with increasing age was observed in both males and females. In males, the proportion of intestinal-type cancer increased steeply from an age of 50 years. In females, the proportion of diffuse-type cancer remained high until 60 years of age. The ratio of intestinal- and diffuse-type gastric cancer in females became similar to that of male patients aged 70 years or older, about 20 years after menopause.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

Figure 3 Survival according to sex and initial cancer stage. (A) Overall and (B) gastric cancer–specific survival. A statistically significant female predominance in overall survival was identified ($P < 0.001$), while a non-significant male predominance was identified in gastric cancer-specific survival. *P* values were calculated using the log-rank test.

hepatocellular carcinoma, pancreatic cancer, and respiratory diseases such as interstitial lung disease and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, while there were relatively more cardiovascular or cerebrovascular deaths in females. Details regarding these are given in Supplementary Tables 2-4.

Subgroup analyses by sex and histology

The results of the subgroup analyses based on sex and histology are presented in Table 3 and Supplementary Table 3. In females, intestinal-type GC was associated with older age and a family history of GC, while diffuse-type GC was associated with younger age and P53 negativity. In males, intestinal-type GC was associated with older age, while diffuse-type GC tended to be associated with younger age and smoking history.

DISCUSSION

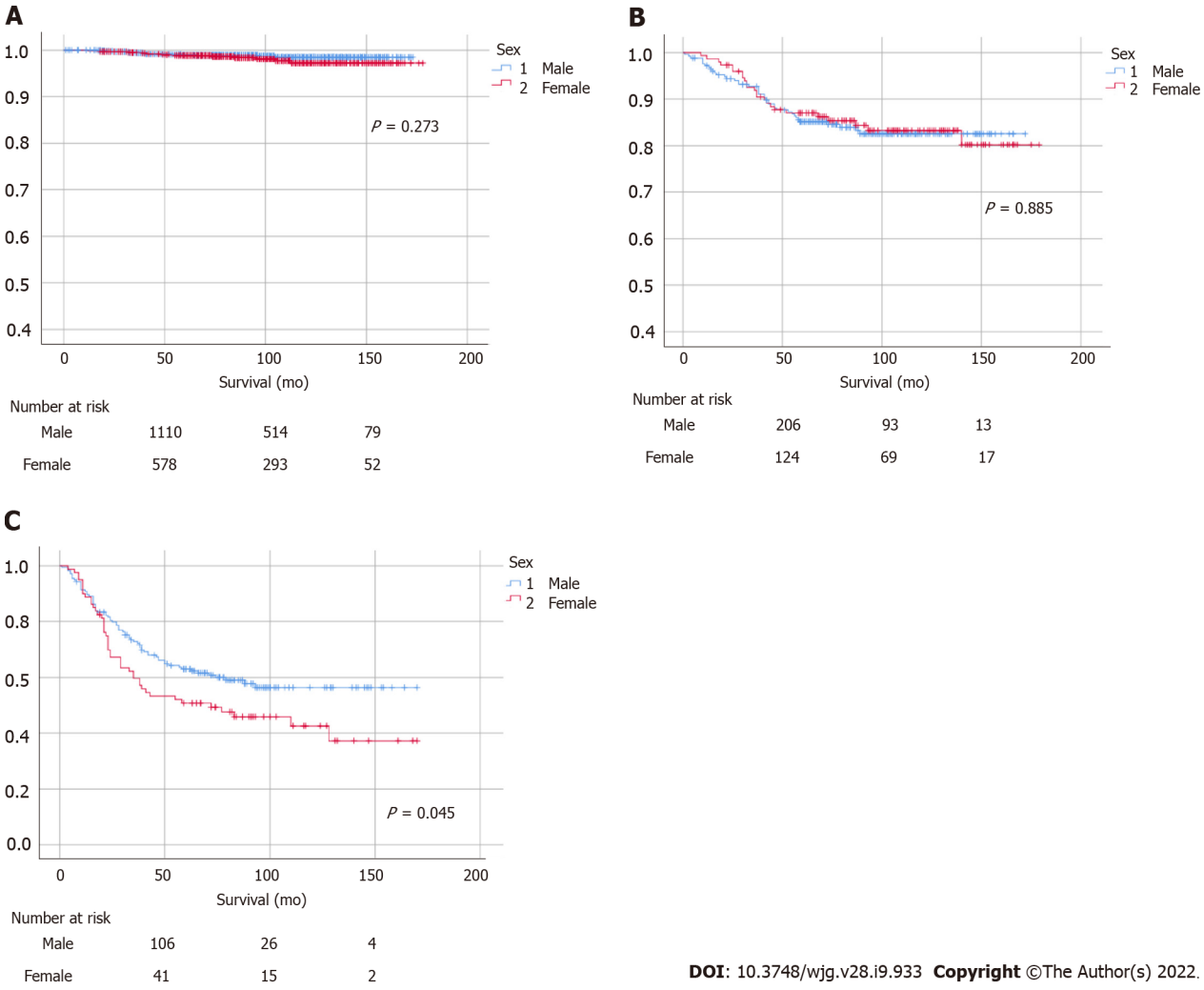
To the best of our knowledge, this study is the first to provide evidence of sex differences in GC with exact histologic diagnosis and long-term follow-up in nearly 3000 patients. In our data, a statistically significant overall survival benefit in females and a non-significant GC-specific survival in males were

Table 3 Clinicopathological features by sex and histologic type

Characteristics	Intestinal type			Diffuse type		
	Female (*n* = 447)	Male (*n* = 1396)	*P* value	Female (*n* = 494)	Male (*n* = 520)	*P* value
Age (yr, mean ± SD)	65.72 ± 10.71	64.06 ± 10.34	0.792	53.60 ± 13.06	55.82 ± 12.48	0.229
Drinking history, *n* (%)						
No	385 (86.1)	619 (44.3)	< 0.001[a]	374 (75.7)	183 (35.2)	< 0.001[a]
Yes	62 (13.9)	777 (55.7)		120 (24.3)	337 (64.8)	
Smoking history, *n* (%)						
No	420 (94.0)	530 (38.0)	< 0.001[a]	447 (90.5)	175 (33.7)	< 0.001[a]
Yes	27 (6.0)	866 (62.0)		47 (9.5)	345 (66.3)	
Family history, *n* (%)						
No	348 (77.9)	1138 (81.5)	0.088	419 (84.8)	447 (86.0)	0.606
Yes	99 (22.1)	258 (18.5)		75 (15.2)	73 (14.0)	
Tumor location, *n* (%)						
Upper	12 (2.7)	44 (3.2)	0.053	7 (1.4)	10 (1.9)	< 0.001[a]
Middle	139 (31.1)	517 (37.0)		334 (67.6)	284 (54.6)	
Lower	296 (66.2)	835 (59.8)		153 (31.0)	226 (43.5)	
Atrophic gastritis, *n* (%)						
No	320 (71.6)	951 (68.1)	0.168	400 (81.0)	389 (74.8)	0.018[a]
Yes	127 (28.4)	445 (31.9)		94 (19.0)	131 (25.2)	
Intestinal metaplasia, *n* (%)						
No	229 (51.2)	751 (53.8)	0.344	303 (61.3)	306 (58.8)	0.418
Yes	218 (48.8)	645 (46.2)		191 (38.7)	214 (41.2)	
T stage, *n* (%)						
T1	355 (79.4)	1087 (77.9)	0.529	314 (63.6)	305 (58.6)	0.445
T2	40 (9.0)	138 (9.9)		57 (11.5)	66 (12.7)	
T3	40 (9.0)	145 (10.4)		99 (20.0)	118 (22.7)	
T4	12 (2.6)	26 (1.8)		24 (4.9)	31 (6.0)	
N stage, *n* (%)						
N0	356 (79.6)	1140 (81.7)	0.745	319 (64.6)	335 (64.4)	0.055
N1	56 (12.5)	149 (10.7)		97 (19.6)	85 (16.4)	
N2	20 (4.5)	62 (4.4)		42 (8.5)	38 (7.3)	
N3	15 (3.4)	45 (3.2)		36 (7.3)	62 (11.9)	
Stage, *n* (%)						
I	375 (83.9)	1171 (83.9)	0.49	342 (69.2)	347 (66.7)	0.152
II	47 (10.5)	142 (10.2)		96 (19.5)	89 (17.1)	
III	23 (5.1)	65 (4.6)		43 (8.7)	66 (12.7)	
IV	2 (0.5)	18 (1.3)		13 (2.6)	18 (3.5)	
Cancer type, *n* (%)						
EGC	355 (79.4)	1086 (77.8)	0.469	314 (63.6)	305 (58.7)	0.109
AGC	92 (20.6)	310 (22.2)		180 (36.4)	215 (41.3)	
P53, *n* (%)						
Negative	293 (65.5)	770 (55.2)	< 0.001[a]	385 (77.9)	393 (75.6)	0.374

Positive	154 (34.5)	626 (44.8)	109 (22.1)	127 (24.4)

[a]*P* < 0.05 indicates statistical significance. SD: Standard deviation; EGC: Early gastric cancer; AGC: Advanced gastric cancer.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.933

Figure 4 Gastric cancer-specific survival in (A) stage I, (B) stage II, and (C) stage above III. There were no significant differences between males and females in stages I and II, but a statistically significant male predominance was observed in advanced-stage cancer (stage III or above, *P* = 0.045). *P* values were calculated using the log-rank test.

observed. In both males and females, a high proportion of diffuse-type cancers was observed among younger patients, while intestinal-type cancer became more prominent with increasing age. However, more females of all ages had diffuse-type cancer, while the ratio of diffuse-type to intestinal-type cancer was higher in females until the age of 60 years. In addition, the incidence of higher proportion of diffuse-type and gastric body cancers in females, compared to intestinal-type and antral cancers in males could be the reasons for higher N stage and poor GC-specific survival in females. Furthermore, there were also differences in comorbidities, including causes of death other than GC, between males and females.

There are few studies on the prognosis of GC by sex, and sex-based differences in GC are not clear, as in other cancers such as colorectal cancer[6,7]. A recent study based on the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) database in the United States reported survival advantages in females[20]. A female advantage was observed in both overall survival and GC-specific survival, and the prognosis of GC and the risk of developing GC were significantly worse in males than in females in that study, so the authors insisted on the necessity for early intervention in high-risk male patients due to their relatively poor prognosis[20]. However, this difference from our results could be due to a difference in the histologic type of GC, with a higher proportion of adenocarcinoma and a lower proportion of signet ring cell carcinoma (SRC), especially in females. In a large meta-analysis of data obtained from the Korea Central Cancer Registry and National Statistical Office reported by Song *et al*[21], the prognosis of female GC patients was also better than that of male GC patients, with differential incidence and

mortality patterns among age groups. However, females tend to have a worse prognosis when they are diagnosed later than 40 years of age. In that study, the histologic type or anatomic subsites of GC could not be identified. Since the 2000s, many early GC (EGC) patients have been identified and treated through a national endoscopic surveillance project in Korea, possibly showing different results from data prior to the 2000s[22]. Contrary to earlier results, a recent study in Korea reported poor prognosis in females[23], similar to the present study. The authors concluded that female GC patients were significantly younger, had more poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas, and were more likely to have SRC than male GC patients. In addition, females with advanced GC (AGC) and SRC had significantly poorer overall survival rates. In our data, among patients with advanced-stage disease (stage III or above), females had significantly lower GC-specific survival rates than males. In our data, the ratio of diffuse-type (undifferentiated) GC was relatively high, especially among younger females. Diffuse-type GC is known to be related to genetic factors such as E-cadherin mutations, feature a poorer prognosis due to rapid growth and poor treatment response, and is generally more common in younger patients [24,25]. Comparing the characteristics of GC in Korea and the United States, more upper-third and differentiated cancers were observed in the United States, while Korean patients showed fewer upper-third cancers with poorer cancer differentiation, deeper invasion, and poorer prognosis; hence, a difference in GC characteristics between Korean and United States populations is suspected[26].

The same results have been shown in previous studies in relation to histologic type and GC location, as more diffuse-type, gastric body location cases were noted in females versus more intestinal-type, stomach antrum location cases in males[27,28]. Based on previous reports on GC location, the distribution was reported as cardia 4%-8%, body 15%-30%, and antrum 60%-80% in a study of EGC in Korea [29]. In another Korean study of patients who underwent endoscopic resection for EGC, the most common location for EGC was the antrum (57.5%) and lesser curvature (37.8%), and body cancers were associated with younger patient age, larger tumor size, and more frequent poorly differentiated or SRC histology than cancers at other sites[30]. Our data are consistent with those of the aforementioned studies, and this relation to histologic type and GC location is believed to be due to differences in the composition of gastric mucous cells, such as the gastric body with a large distribution of parietal cells and the antrum with a large distribution of G cells[31].

The effects of sex hormones may cause this sex-based difference in GC. Epidemiological studies have reported that exogenous sex hormone exposure reduces the risk of esophageal adenocarcinoma[32,33] and esophageal squamous cell carcinoma[34], and a decrease in the risk of GC[35] and colorectal cancer [33,36] have been reported in females taking oral contraceptives or hormone replacement therapy. A large cohort study in Japan also reported that females in early menarche had a decreased risk of GC, especially differentiated-type GC, in subgroup analyses of histologic subtypes[37]. In addition, in a Chinese study of approximately 2000 surgically treated GC patients, the proportion of female GC patients showed a decreasing tendency, and the proportion of male GC patients showed an increasing tendency with age, but this trend stopped after 60 years of age[38]. Furthermore, a recent study in Korea reported that no premenopausal females had intestinal-type GC and that the ratio of intestinal-type GC increased in females after menopause and became similar to that of males about 10 years after menopause; this parity was associated with an increased risk of intestinal-type GC in females after menopause[27].

These results suggest that estrogen plays a role in curbing the development of GC in females, especially in intestinal-type GC. However, the specific mechanisms of estrogen in different histologic subtypes have not yet been established. Several studies have attempted to explain this by investigating the role of estrogen receptors (ER) in GC. First, Yi *et al*[39] showed that ERα expression was associated with diffuse-type GC and shorter disease-free survival. Wang *et al*[40] reported that well-differentiated gastric adenocarcinoma has a higher expression rate of ERβ and that poorly differentiated gastric adenocarcinoma is associated with a reduction or loss of ERβ. According to previous studies, diffuse-type GC may be initiated by the downregulation of E-cadherin by 17β-estradiol (E2), the most potent isoform of estrogen, through ERα[41-43].

In addition to the action of estrogen, Gan *et al*[44] reported that the four sex hormone receptors, ERα, ERβ, progesterone receptor, and androgen receptor (AR), were expressed independently and showed a decreased expression pattern in gastric tumors compared to adjacent normal tissues, suggesting that sex hormone receptors may be partly involved in gastric carcinogenesis. Jukic *et al*[2] reported a significantly higher frequency of cases with AR-positive cells in the stroma of intestinal-type GC in males than in females, which may be the reason for the greater invasiveness of this cancer type in males and presented the possibility of AR-targeted agents in GC treatment. Another study by Hsu *et al*[45] showed that males were more likely to develop tumor recurrence and liver metastasis than females, especially in cases of stage III GC. The authors suggested that the cause was higher programmed death ligand 1 expression in males and GC patients aged 65 years or older, and supporting data suggest that sex hormones are the basis of these differences[46,47].

The changes in the proportion of intestinal-type and diffuse-type cancers in the present study suggest that estrogen might have a protective effect on intestinal-type GC[27,28]. Thus, intestinal-type GC is much less common in young females than in males, and the prevalence of intestinal-type GC increases in females after menopause, which is likely to be similar to males about 20 years after menopause according to our data (approximately 70 years of age). Additional in-depth studies are needed to

confirm the role of sex hormones, including estrogen, in the pathogenesis and progression of GC, depending on the tissue type.

The pattern of P53 overexpression also differed by sex; P53 overexpression was more frequent in males and intestinal-type GC patients. In our previous report on P53 overexpression, the clinical and prognostic significance differed by histological type of GC; P53 overexpression was more common in intestinal-type GC, but was associated with a poor prognosis for diffuse-type GC[18]. Therefore, it is also likely to act as a factor that affects GC prognosis differently in males and females.

Our study has several limitations. First, the enrolled subjects were patients who underwent surgical treatment after receiving a diagnosis of GC; therefore, early cases treated with endoscopic resection and advanced inoperable cases were not included. Hence, in terms of GC-related survival and mortality, the data from our study are likely to be slightly different from those of all patients with GC. To compensate for this limitation, we are conducting a follow-up study of patients diagnosed with and treated for over 14000 GC in SNUBH. The results of our data analyses to this point showed no significant differences between males and females according to the treatment method. Second, there are no data on estrogen exposure such as menopause, childbirth, and breastfeeding in this study, making it difficult to provide additional evidence that estrogen has protective effects against intestinal-type cancer. Further research, including a history of sex hormone use, is required. Third, the eradication of *H. pylori* was not confirmed in all patients, although postoperative *H. pylori* eradication treatment may affect prognosis or survival [17]. In the future, additional research is needed that considers both *H. pylori* infection and sex. In contrast, our research has several strengths over existing studies. Studies involving subjects before the year 2000 reported that the prognosis of GC was relatively good in females; however, these studies did not reflect the situation in East Asia, where the prevalence of GC is high[20], or the exact histologic type of GC was not analyzed[21]. A relatively recent large-scale Korean study reflecting histological types reported that the prognosis of GC was poorer in females than in males, similar to our results[23]. In this study, the changes in the histology of GC according to age was examined, and the change in the ratio according to aging and menopause was confirmed, suggesting that female hormones would affect the development and progression of GC. However, we further analyzed the comorbidities of GC patients with respect to survival.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, differences in the epidemiology of GC incidence, including a higher proportion of diffuse-type histology and mortality, and poorer survival in AGC in females, were observed. The proportion of diffuse-type cancer was found to be higher in younger patients, the frequency of intestinal-type histology increased with age, and the ratio of diffuse-type cancer was higher until the age of 60 years in females. Differences in Lauren histologic type and tumor location by sex were also observed, with a high proportion of diffuse-type and gastric body location in females. Comorbidities, including other malignancies and respiratory diseases, are more common in males. These differences may originate from hormonal factors and should be considered in the diagnosis, treatment, and prediction of prognosis of GC in individuals.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Despite the nationwide large-scale screening campaign, the incidence of gastric cancer (GC) in Korea is still high. The incidence is approximately twice as high in males than in females.

Research motivation

However, studies so far have not fully explained the different characteristics of GC between the sexes. These differences might be due to the difference in exposure to the known risk factors for GC, such as frequent *Helicobacter pylori* infection, smoking, and alcohol consumption in males, but we thought that there is a possibility that sex hormones were based on this difference.

Research objectives

This study aimed to analyze sex-based differences in clinicopathological features, staging, survival, and comorbidities in GC.

Research methods

A total of 2983 patients diagnosed with gastric adenocarcinoma who received surgical treatment at the Seoul National University Bundang Hospital between 2003 and 2017 were included, and clinicopathological characteristics, histologic type of GC, overall and GC-specific survival rates, and associated risk

factors were analyzed.

Research results

The male to female ratio was 2:1, and the average age of the female group was lower than that of the male group. Diffuse-type GC was more common in younger patients, especially in females younger than 60 years of age, and the proportion of intestinal-type GC increased with age. The overall survival rate was significantly higher in females, whereas GC-specific survival tended to be higher in males. Comorbidities, including other malignancies and respiratory diseases, are more common in males.

Research conclusions

Differences in the epidemiology of GC incidence, including a higher proportion of diffuse-type histology, mortality, including poorer survival in the advanced stage in females, and comorbidities were observed. These differences may be due to hormonal factors.

Research perspectives

We believe that a larger study including patients who received non-surgical treatment is needed. Individual sex hormone data, including menopause, childbirth, and breastfeeding, would be analyzed to prove the protective effect of estrogen against intestinal-type GC.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Choi Y analyzed the data, provided statistical support, and drafted the article; Kim N designed this study, collected the data, and edited the manuscript; Kim KW, Jo HH, Park J, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, and Lee DH performed endoscopies for the diagnosis of gastric cancer and edited the text; Park YS, Ahn SH, Suh YS, and Park DJ performed surgeries for gastric cancer; Kim HH kindly provided surgical cohort information, advised on the design of this study and supervised the manuscript preparation; HJO and HSL performed the histologic diagnosis of gastric cancer; Kim JW, Kim JW and Lee KW administered chemotherapy to patients with advanced gastric cancer; and Chang W, Park JH, Lee YJ, Lee KH, and Kim YH performed the radiologic studies; all authors reviewed the final manuscript and provided comments.

Supported by National Research Foundation of Korea.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of SNUBH (IRB No. B-1902–523-107).

Informed consent statement: Patients were not required to give informed consent to the study because the analysis used anonymous clinical data that were obtained after each patient agreed to treatment by written consent.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

Data sharing statement: To gain access to data, data requestors will need to sign a data access agreement. Proposals should be directed to the Ethics Committee of Seoul National University Bundang Hospital.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: South Korea

ORCID number: Yonghoon Choi 0000-0002-1331-969X; Nayoung Kim 0000-0002-9397-0406; Ki Wook Kim 0000-0003-3936-2490; Hyeong Ho Jo 0000-0002-4950-5435; Jaehyung Park 0000-0003-1142-264X; Hyuk Yoon 0000-0002-2657-0349; Cheol Min Shin 0000-0003-2265-9845; Young Soo Park 0000-0001-8945-0507; Dong Ho Lee 0000-0002-6376-410X; Hyeon Jeong Oh 0000-0002-9998-3988; Hye Seung Lee 0000-0002-1667-7986; Young Suk Park 0000-0002-6352-9759; Sang-Hoon Ahn 0000-0001-8827-3625; Yun-Suhk Suh 0000-0003-3319-8482; Do Joong Park 0000-0001-9644-6127; Hyung-Ho Kim 0000-0002-8916-0048; Ji-Won Kim 0000-0001-6426-9074; Jin Won Kim 0000-0002-1357-7015; Keun-Wook Lee 0000-0002-8491-703X; Won Chang 0000-0001-7367-9841; Ji Hoon Park 0000-0002-6794-4909; Yoon Jin Lee 0000-0002-3572-029X; Kyoung Ho Lee 0000-0001-6045-765X; Young Hoon Kim 0000-0001-5554-3828.

S-Editor: Yan JP
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Yan JP

REFERENCES

1 **Global Burden of Disease Cancer Collaboration**, Fitzmaurice C, Abate D, Abbasi N, Abbastabar H, Abd-Allah F, Abdel-Rahman O, Abdelalim A, Abdoli A, Abdollahpour I, Abdulle ASM, Abebe ND, Abraha HN, Abu-Raddad LJ, Abualhasan A, Adedeji IA, Advani SM, Afarideh M, Afshari M, Aghaali M, Agius D, Agrawal S, Ahmadi A, Ahmadian E, Ahmadpour E, Ahmed MB, Akbari ME, Akinyemiju T, Al-Aly Z, AlAbdulKader AM, Alahdab F, Alam T, Alamene GM, Alemnew BTT, Alene KA, Alinia C, Alipour V, Aljunid SM, Bakeshei FA, Almadi MAH, Almasi-Hashiani A, Alsharif U, Alsowaidi S, Alvis-Guzman N, Amini E, Amini S, Amoako YA, Anbari Z, Anber NH, Andrei CL, Anjomshoa M, Ansari F, Ansariadi A, Appiah SCY, Arab-Zozani M, Arabloo J, Arefi Z, Aremu O, Areri HA, Artaman A, Asayesh H, Asfaw ET, Ashagre AF, Assadi R, Ataeinia B, Atalay HT, Ataro Z, Atique S, Ausloos M, Avila-Burgos L, Avokpaho EFGA, Awasthi A, Awoke N, Ayala Quintanilla BP, Ayanore MA, Ayele HT, Babaee E, Bacha U, Badawi A, Bagherzadeh M, Bagli E, Balakrishnan S, Balouchi A, Bärnighausen TW, Battista RJ, Behzadifar M, Bekele BB, Belay YB, Belayneh YM, Berfield KKS, Berhane A, Bernabe E, Beuran M, Bhakta N, Bhattacharyya K, Biadgo B, Bijani A, Bin Sayeed MS, Birungi C, Bisignano C, Bitew H, Bjørge T, Bleyer A, Bogale KA, Bojia HA, Borzì AM, Bosetti C, Bou-Orm IR, Brenner H, Brewer JD, Briko AN, Briko NI, Bustamante-Teixeira MT, Butt ZA, Carreras G, Carrero JJ, Carvalho F, Castro C, Castro F, Catalá-López F, Cerin E, Chaiah Y, Chanie WF, Chattu VK, Chaturvedi P, Chauhan NS, Chehrazi M, Chiang PP, Chichiabellu TY, Chido-Amajuoyi OG, Chimed-Ochir O, Choi JJ, Christopher DJ, Chu DT, Constantin MM, Costa VM, Crocetti E, Crowe CS, Curado MP, Dahlawi SMA, Damiani G, Darwish AH, Daryani A, das Neves J, Demeke FM, Demis AB, Demissie BW, Demoz GT, Denova-Gutiérrez E, Derakhshani A, Deribe KS, Desai R, Desalegn BB, Desta M, Dey S, Dharmaratne SD, Dhimal M, Diaz D, Dinberu MTT, Djalalinia S, Doku DT, Drake TM, Dubey M, Dubljanin E, Duken EE, Ebrahimi H, Effiong A, Eftekhari A, El Sayed I, Zaki MES, El-Jaafary SI, El-Khatib Z, Elemineh DA, Elkout H, Ellenbogen RG, Elsharkawy A, Emamian MH, Endalew DA, Endries AY, Eshrati B, Fadhil I, Fallah Omrani V, Faramarzi M, Farhangi MA, Farioli A, Farzadfar F, Fentahun N, Fernandes E, Feyissa GT, Filip I, Fischer F, Fisher JL, Force LM, Foroutan M, Freitas M, Fukumoto T, Futran ND, Gallus S, Gankpe FG, Gayesa RT, Gebrehiwot TT, Gebremeskel GG, Gedefaw GA, Gelaw BK, Geta B, Getachew S, Gezae KE, Ghafourifard M, Ghajar A, Ghashghaee A, Gholamian A, Gill PS, Ginindza TTG, Girmay A, Gizaw M, Gomez RS, Gopalani SV, Gorini G, Goulart BNG, Grada A, Ribeiro Guerra M, Guimaraes ALS, Gupta PC, Gupta R, Hadkhale K, Haj-Mirzaian A, Hamadeh RR, Hamidi S, Hanfore LK, Haro JM, Hasankhani M, Hasanzadeh A, Hassen HY, Hay RJ, Hay SI, Henok A, Henry NJ, Herteliu C, Hidru HD, Hoang CL, Hole MK, Hoogar P, Horita N, Hosgood HD, Hosseini M, Hosseinzadeh M, Hostiuc M, Hostiuc S, Househ M, Hussen MM, Ileanu B, Ilic MD, Innos K, Irvani SSN, Iseh KR, Islam SMS, Islami F, Jafari Balalami N, Jafarinia M, Jahangiry L, Jahani MA, Jahanmehr N, Jakovljevic M, James SL, Javanbakht M, Jayaraman S, Jee SH, Jenabi E, Jha RP, Jonas JB, Jonnagaddala J, Joo T, Jungari SB, Jürisson M, Kabir A, Kamangar F, Karch A, Karimi N, Karimian A, Kasaeian A, Kasahun GG, Kassa B, Kassa TD, Kassaw MW, Kaul A, Keiyoro PN, Kelbore AG, Kerbo AA, Khader YS, Khalilarjmandi M, Khan EA, Khan G, Khang YH, Khatab K, Khater A, Khayamzadeh M, Khazaee-Pool M, Khazaei S, Khoja AT, Khosravi MH, Khubchandani J, Kianipour N, Kim D, Kim YJ, Kisa A, Kisa S, Kissimova-Skarbek K, Komaki H, Koyanagi A, Krohn KJ, Bicer BK, Kugbey N, Kumar V, Kuupiel D, La Vecchia C, Lad DP, Lake EA, Lakew AM, Lal DK, Lami FH, Lan Q, Lasrado S, Lauriola P, Lazarus JV, Leigh J, Leshargie CT, Liao Y, Limenih MA, Listl S, Lopez AD, Lopukhov PD, Lunevicius R, Madadin M, Magdeldin S, El Razek HMA, Majeed A, Maleki A, Malekzadeh R, Manafi A, Manafi N, Manamo WA, Mansourian M, Mansournia MA, Mantovani LG, Maroufizadeh S, Martini SMS, Mashamba-Thompson TP, Massenburg BB, Maswabi MT, Mathur MR, McAlinden C, McKee M, Meheretu HAA, Mehrotra R, Mehta V, Meier T, Melaku YA, Meles GG, Meles HG, Melese A, Melku M, Memiah PTN, Mendoza W, Menezes RG, Merat S, Meretoja TJ, Mestrovic T, Miazgowski B, Miazgowski T, Mihretie KMM, Miller TR, Mills EJ, Mir SM, Mirzaei H, Mirzaei HR, Mishra R, Moazen B, Mohammad DK, Mohammad KA, Mohammad Y, Darwesh AM, Mohammadbeigi A, Mohammadi H, Mohammadi M, Mohammadian M, Mohammadian-Hafshejani A, Mohammadoo-Khorasani M, Mohammadpourhodki R, Mohammed AS, Mohammed JA, Mohammed S, Mohebi F, Mokdad AH, Monasta L, Moodley Y, Moosazadeh M, Moossavi M, Moradi G, Moradi-Joo M, Moradi-Lakeh M, Moradpour F, Morawska L, Morgado-da-Costa J, Morisaki N, Morrison SD, Mosapour A, Mousavi SM, Muche AA, Muhammed OSS, Musa J, Nabhan AF, Naderi M, Nagarajan AJ, Nagel G, Nahvijou A, Naik G, Najafi F, Naldi L, Nam HS, Nasiri N, Nazari J, Negoi I, Neupane S, Newcomb PA, Nggada HA, Ngunjiri JW, Nguyen CT, Nikniaz L, Ningrum DNA, Nirayo YL, Nixon MR, Nnaji CA, Nojomi M, Nosratnejad S, Shiadeh MN, Obsa MS, Ofori-Asenso R, Ogbo FA, Oh IH, Olagunju AT, Olagunju TO, Oluwasanu MM, Omonisi AE, Onwujekwe OE, Oommen AM, Oren E, Ortega-Altamirano DDV, Ota E, Otstavnov SS, Owolabi MO, P A M, Padubidri JR, Pakhale S, Pakpour AH, Pana A, Park EK, Parsian H, Pashaei T, Patel S, Patil ST, Pennini A, Pereira DM, Piccinelli C, Pillay JD, Pirestani M, Pishgar F, Postma MJ, Pourjafar H, Pourmalek F, Pourshams A, Prakash S, Prasad N, Qorbani M, Rabiee M, Rabiee N, Radfar A, Rafiei A, Rahim F, Rahimi M, Rahman MA, Rajati F, Rana SM, Raoofi S, Rath GK, Rawaf DL, Rawaf S, Reiner RC, Renzaho AMN, Rezaei N, Rezapour A, Ribeiro AI, Ribeiro D, Ronfani L, Roro EM, Roshandel G, Rostami A, Saad RS, Sabbagh P, Sabour S, Saddik B, Safiri S, Sahebkar A, Salahshoor MR, Salehi F, Salem H, Salem MR, Salimzadeh H, Salomon JA, Samy AM, Sanabria J, Santric Milicevic MM, Sartorius B, Sarveazad A, Sathian B, Satpathy M, Savic M, Sawhney M, Sayyah M, Schneider IJC, Schöttker B, Sekerija M, Sepanlou SG, Sepehrimanesh M, Seyedmousavi S, Shaahmadi F, Shabaninejad H, Shahbaz M, Shaikh MA, Shamshirian A, Shamsizadeh M, Sharafi H, Sharafi Z, Sharif M, Sharifi A, Sharifi H, Sharma R, Sheikh A, Shirkoohi R, Shukla SR, Si S, Siabani S, Silva DAS, Silveira DGA, Singh A, Singh JA, Sisay S, Sitas F, Sobngwi E, Soofi M, Soriano JB, Stathopoulou V, Sufiyan MB, Tabarés-Seisdedos R, Tabuchi T, Takahashi K, Tamtaji OR, Tarawneh MR, Tassew SG, Taymoori P, Tehrani-Banihashemi A, Temsah MH, Temsah O, Tesfay BE, Tesfay FH, Teshale MY, Tessema GA, Thapa S, Tlaye KG, Topor-Madry R, Tovani-Palone MR, Traini E, Tran BX, Tran KB, Tsadik AG, Ullah I, Uthman OA, Vacante M, Vaezi M, Varona Pérez P, Veisani Y, Vidale S, Violante FS, Vlassov V, Vollset SE, Vos T, Vosoughi K, Vu GT, Vujcic IS, Wabinga H, Wachamo TM, Wagnew FS, Waheed Y, Weldegebreal F, Weldesamuel GT, Wijeratne T, Wondafrash DZ, Wonde TE, Wondmieneh AB, Workie HM, Yadav R, Yadegar A, Yadollahpour A, Yaseri M, Yazdi-Feyzabadi V, Yeshaneh A, Yimam MA, Yimer EM, Yisma E, Yonemoto N, Younis MZ, Yousefi B, Yousefifard M, Yu C, Zabeh E, Zadnik V, Moghadam TZ, Zaidi Z, Zamani M, Zandian H, Zangeneh A, Zaki L, Zendehdel K, Zenebe ZM, Zewale TA, Ziapour A, Zodpey S, Murray CJL. Global, Regional, and

National Cancer Incidence, Mortality, Years of Life Lost, Years Lived With Disability, and Disability-Adjusted Life-Years for 29 Cancer Groups, 1990 to 2017: A Systematic Analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study. *JAMA Oncol* 2019; **5**: 1749-1768 [PMID: 31560378 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.2996]

2 **Jukic Z**, Radulovic P, Stojković R, Mijic A, Grah J, Kruslin B, Ferencic Z, Fucic A. Gender Difference in Distribution of Estrogen and Androgen Receptors in Intestinal-type Gastric Cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2017; **37**: 197-202 [PMID: 28011491 DOI: 10.21873/anticanres.11306]

3 **Kelley JR**, Duggan JM. Gastric cancer epidemiology and risk factors. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2003; **56**: 1-9 [PMID: 12589864 DOI: 10.1016/s0895-4356(02)00534-6]

4 **Massarrat S**, Stolte M. Development of gastric cancer and its prevention. *Arch Iran Med* 2014; **17**: 514-520 [PMID: 24979566]

5 **Lee TY**, Wang CB, Chen TT, Kuo KN, Wu MS, Lin JT, Wu CY; Taiwan Gastrointestinal Disease and Helicobacter Consortium. A tool to predict risk for gastric cancer in patients with peptic ulcer disease on the basis of a nationwide cohort. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 287-293.e1 [PMID: 25083561 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.07.043]

6 **DeCosse JJ**, Ngoi SS, Jacobson JS, Cennerazzo WJ. Gender and colorectal cancer. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 1993; **2**: 105-115 [PMID: 8461861 DOI: 10.1097/00008469-199303000-00003]

7 **Yang Y**, Wang G, He J, Ren S, Wu F, Zhang J, Wang F. Gender differences in colorectal cancer survival: A meta-analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2017; **141**: 1942-1949 [PMID: 28599355 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.30827]

8 **Aron M**, Nguyen MM, Stein RJ, Gill IS. Impact of gender in renal cell carcinoma: an analysis of the SEER database. *Eur Urol* 2008; **54**: 133-140 [PMID: 18160207 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2007.12.001]

9 **Mungan NA**, Aben KK, Schoenberg MP, Visser O, Coebergh JW, Witjes JA, Kiemeney LA. Gender differences in stage-adjusted bladder cancer survival. *Urology* 2000; **55**: 876-880 [PMID: 10840099 DOI: 10.1016/s0090-4295(00)00523-9]

10 **Li R**, Singh M. Sex differences in cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. *Front Neuroendocrinol* 2014; **35**: 385-403 [PMID: 24434111 DOI: 10.1016/j.yfrne.2014.01.002]

11 **Cerri S**, Mus L, Blandini F. Parkinson's Disease in Women and Men: What's the Difference? *J Parkinsons Dis* 2019; **9**: 501-515 [PMID: 31282427 DOI: 10.3233/JPD-191683]

12 **Ngo ST**, Steyn FJ, McCombe PA. Gender differences in autoimmune disease. *Front Neuroendocrinol* 2014; **35**: 347-369 [PMID: 24793874 DOI: 10.1016/j.yfrne.2014.04.004]

13 **Berlth F**, Bollschweiler E, Drebber U, Hoelscher AH, Moenig S. Pathohistological classification systems in gastric cancer: diagnostic relevance and prognostic value. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 5679-5684 [PMID: 24914328 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i19.5679]

14 **Chen YC**, Fang WL, Wang RF, Liu CA, Yang MH, Lo SS, Wu CW, Li AF, Shyr YM, Huang KH. Clinicopathological Variation of Lauren Classification in Gastric Cancer. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2016; **22**: 197-202 [PMID: 26502923 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-015-9996-6]

15 **Gong EJ**, Lee JY, Bae SE, Park YS, Choi KD, Song HJ, Lee GH, Jung HY, Jeong WJ, Cheon GJ, Yook JH, Kim BS. Characteristics of non-cardia gastric cancer with a high serum anti-Helicobacter pylori IgG titer and its association with diffuse-type histology. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0195264 [PMID: 29621300 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0195264]

16 **Mengardo V**, Treppiedi E, Bencivenga M, Dal Cero M, Giacopuzzi S. Tailored treatment for signet ring cell gastric cancer. *Updates Surg* 2018; **70**: 167-171 [PMID: 29948660 DOI: 10.1007/s13304-018-0550-4]

17 **Choi Y**, Kim N, Yun CY, Choi YJ, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, Ahn SH, Joong Park D, Lee HS, Kim JW, Lee KW, Chang W, Park JH, Lee YJ, Lee KH, Kim YH, Lee DH, Kim HH. Effect of Helicobacter pylori eradication after subtotal gastrectomy on the survival rate of patients with gastric cancer: follow-up for up to 15 years. *Gastric Cancer* 2020; **23**: 1051-1063 [PMID: 32361784 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-020-01076-2]

18 **Kim KW**, Kim N, Choi Y, Kim WS, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, Lee DH, Ahn SH, Park DJ, Kim HH, Lee HS, Kim JW, Lee KW, Chang W, Park JH, Lee YJ, Lee KH, Kim YH. Different effects of p53 protein overexpression on the survival of gastric cancer patients according to Lauren histologic classification: a retrospective study. *Gastric Cancer* 2021; **24**: 844-857 [PMID: 33598811 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-021-01163-y]

19 **Choi Y**, Kim N, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, Lee DH, Ahn SH, Suh YS, Park DJ, Kim HH. The Incidence and Risk Factors for Metachronous Gastric Cancer in the Remnant Stomach after Gastric Cancer Surgery. *Gut Liver* 2021 [PMID: 34462394 DOI: 10.5009/gnl210202]

20 **Li H**, Wei Z, Wang C, Chen W, He Y, Zhang C. Gender Differences in Gastric Cancer Survival: 99,922 Cases Based on the SEER Database. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2020; **24**: 1747-1757 [PMID: 31346960 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-019-04304-y]

21 **Song M**, Kang D, Yang JJ, Choi JY, Sung H, Lee Y, Yoon HS, Choi Y, Kong SH, Lee HJ, Yang HK, Kim WH. Age and sex interactions in gastric cancer incidence and mortality trends in Korea. *Gastric Cancer* 2015; **18**: 580-589 [PMID: 25091081 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-014-0411-x]

22 **Jun JK**, Choi KS, Lee HY, Suh M, Park B, Song SH, Jung KW, Lee CW, Choi IJ, Park EC, Lee D. Effectiveness of the Korean National Cancer Screening Program in Reducing Gastric Cancer Mortality. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 1319-1328.e7 [PMID: 28147224 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.01.029]

23 **Kim HW**, Kim JH, Lim BJ, Kim H, Park JJ, Youn YH, Park H, Noh SH, Kim JW, Choi SH. Sex Disparity in Gastric Cancer: Female Sex is a Poor Prognostic Factor for Advanced Gastric Cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2016; **23**: 4344-4351 [PMID: 27469120 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-016-5448-0]

24 **Waldum HL**, Fossmark R. Types of Gastric Carcinomas. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **19** [PMID: 30567376 DOI: 10.3390/ijms19124109]

25 **Ansari S**, Gantuya B, Tuan VP, Yamaoka Y. Diffuse Gastric Cancer: A Summary of Analogous Contributing Factors for Its Molecular Pathogenicity. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **19** [PMID: 30115886 DOI: 10.3390/ijms19082424]

26 **Shim JH**, Song KY, Jeon HM, Park CH, Jacks LM, Gonen M, Shah MA, Brennan MF, Coit DG, Strong VE. Is gastric cancer different in Korea and the United States? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2014; **21**: 2332-2339 [PMID: 24599411 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-014-3608-7]

27 **Kim SM**, Min BH, Lee J, An JY, Lee JH, Sohn TS, Bae JM, Kim JJ, Kang WK, Kim S, Choi MG. Protective Effects of Female Reproductive Factors on Lauren Intestinal-Type Gastric Adenocarcinoma. *Yonsei Med J* 2018; **59**: 28-34 [PMID:

29214773 DOI: 10.3349/ymj.2018.59.1.28]
28 **Jung YJ**, Kim HJ, Park CH, Park SJ, Kim N. Effects of Reproductive Factors on Lauren Intestinal-Type Gastric Cancers in Females: A Multicenter Retrospective Study in South Korea. *Gut Liver* 2022 [PMID: 35000933 DOI: 10.5009/gnl210293]
29 **Kim SJ**, Choi CW. Common Locations of Gastric Cancer: Review of Research from the Endoscopic Submucosal Dissection Era. *J Korean Med Sci* 2019; **34**: e231 [PMID: 31496141 DOI: 10.3346/jkms.2019.34.e231]
30 **Kim K**, Cho Y, Sohn JH, Kim DH, Do IG, Lee HJ, Do SI, Ahn S, Lee HW, Chae SW. Clinicopathologic characteristics of early gastric cancer according to specific intragastric location. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2019; **19**: 24 [PMID: 30736729 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-019-0949-5]
31 **Walsh JH**, Lam SK. Physiology and pathology of gastrin. *Clin Gastroenterol* 1980; **9**: 567-591 [PMID: 7000395]
32 **Lagergren K**, Lagergren J, Brusselaers N. Hormone replacement therapy and oral contraceptives and risk of oesophageal adenocarcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2014; **135**: 2183-2190 [PMID: 24676860 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28869]
33 **Green J**, Czanner G, Reeves G, Watson J, Wise L, Roddam A, Beral V. Menopausal hormone therapy and risk of gastrointestinal cancer: nested case-control study within a prospective cohort, and meta-analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **130**: 2387-2396 [PMID: 21671473 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26236]
34 **Freedman ND**, Lacey JV Jr, Hollenbeck AR, Leitzmann MF, Schatzkin A, Abnet CC. The association of menstrual and reproductive factors with upper gastrointestinal tract cancers in the NIH-AARP cohort. *Cancer* 2010; **116**: 1572-1581 [PMID: 20186831 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.24880]
35 **Camargo MC**, Goto Y, Zabaleta J, Morgan DR, Correa P, Rabkin CS. Sex hormones, hormonal interventions, and gastric cancer risk: a meta-analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2012; **21**: 20-38 [PMID: 22028402 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0834]
36 **Song J**, Jin Z, Han H, Li M, Guo Y, Guo H, Guo W, He J. Hormone replacement therapies, oral contraceptives, reproductive factors and colorectal adenoma risk: a systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis of observational studies. *Colorectal Dis* 2019; **21**: 748-759 [PMID: 30748083 DOI: 10.1111/codi.14582]
37 **Persson C**, Inoue M, Sasazuki S, Kurahashi N, Iwasaki M, Ye W, Tsugane S; JPHC Study Group. Female reproductive factors and the risk of gastric cancer in a large-scale population-based cohort study in Japan (JPHC study). *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2008; **17**: 345-353 [PMID: 18562960 DOI: 10.1097/CEJ.0b013e3282f521e4]
38 **Yu J**, He Y, Guo Z. Age trend of the male to female sex ratio in surgical gastric cancer patients at a single institution. *World J Surg Oncol* 2014; **12**: 269 [PMID: 25141903 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-12-269]
39 **Yi JH**, Do IG, Jang J, Kim ST, Kim KM, Park SH, Park JO, Park YS, Lim HY, Kang WK, Lee J. Anti-tumor efficacy of fulvestrant in estrogen receptor positive gastric cancer. *Sci Rep* 2014; **4**: 7592 [PMID: 25534230 DOI: 10.1038/srep07592]
40 **Wang M**, Pan JY, Song GR, Chen HB, An LJ, Qu SX. Altered expression of estrogen receptor alpha and beta in advanced gastric adenocarcinoma: correlation with prothymosin alpha and clinicopathological parameters. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2007; **33**: 195-201 [PMID: 17046193 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2006.09.009]
41 **Park SH**, Cheung LW, Wong AS, Leung PC. Estrogen regulates Snail and Slug in the down-regulation of E-cadherin and induces metastatic potential of ovarian cancer cells through estrogen receptor alpha. *Mol Endocrinol* 2008; **22**: 2085-2098 [PMID: 18550773 DOI: 10.1210/me.2007-0512]
42 **Helguero LA**, Lindberg K, Gardmo C, Schwend T, Gustafsson JA, Haldosén LA. Different roles of estrogen receptors alpha and beta in the regulation of E-cadherin protein levels in a mouse mammary epithelial cell line. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 8695-8704 [PMID: 18974111 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-0788]
43 **Oesterreich S**, Deng W, Jiang S, Cui X, Ivanova M, Schiff R, Kang K, Hadsell DL, Behrens J, Lee AV. Estrogen-mediated down-regulation of E-cadherin in breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 5203-5208 [PMID: 14500345 DOI: 10.1097/00130404-200309000-00013]
44 **Gan L**, He J, Zhang X, Zhang YJ, Yu GZ, Chen Y, Pan J, Wang JJ, Wang X. Expression profile and prognostic role of sex hormone receptors in gastric cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2012; **12**: 566 [PMID: 23199240 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-12-566]
45 **Hsu LW**, Huang KH, Chen MH, Fang WL, Chao Y, Lo SS, Li AF, Wu CW, Shyr YM. Genetic alterations in gastric cancer patients according to sex. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2020; **13**: 376-388 [PMID: 33288737 DOI: 10.18632/aging.202142]
46 **Böger C**, Behrens HM, Mathiak M, Krüger S, Kalthoff H, Röcken C. PD-L1 is an independent prognostic predictor in gastric cancer of Western patients. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 24269-24283 [PMID: 27009855 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.8169]
47 **Özdemir BC**, Dotto GP. Sex Hormones and Anticancer Immunity. *Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **25**: 4603-4610 [PMID: 30890551 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-19-0137]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 948-960

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.948

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Postoperative morbidity adversely impacts oncological prognosis after curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma

Zhi-Peng Liu, Wei-Yue Chen, Yan-Qi Zhang, Yan Jiang, Jie Bai, Yu Pan, Shi-Yun Zhong, Yun-Ping Zhong, Zhi-Yu Chen, Hai-Su Dai

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B, B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Gusho CA, Isaji S, Kim BS, Ziogas IA

Received: September 1, 2021
Peer-review started: September 1, 2021
First decision: November 17, 2021
Revised: November 25, 2021
Accepted: January 29, 2022
Article in press: January 29, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Zhi-Peng Liu, Yan Jiang, Jie Bai, Yu Pan, Shi-Yun Zhong, Yun-Ping Zhong, Zhi-Yu Chen, Hai-Su Dai, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, Southwest Hospital, Third Military Medical University (Army Medical University), Chongqing 400038, China

Wei-Yue Chen, Department of Clinical Center of Oncology, Lishui Hospital of Zhejiang University, Lishui 323000, Zhejiang Province, China

Yan-Qi Zhang, Department of Health Statistics, Third Military Medical University (Army Medical University), Chongqing 400038, China

Corresponding author: Hai-Su Dai, MD, Professor, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, Southwest Hospital, Third Military Medical University (Army Medical University), No. 30 Gaotanyan Road, Chongqing 400038, China. daihaisu@163.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Postoperative morbidity after curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma (HCCA) is common; however, whether it has an impact on oncological prognosis is unknown.

AIM

To evaluate the influence of postoperative morbidity on tumor recurrence and mortality after curative resection for HCCA.

METHODS

Patients with recently diagnosed HCCA who had undergone curative resection between January 2010 and December 2017 at The First Affiliated Hospital of Army Medical University in China were enrolled. The independent risk factors for morbidity in the 30 d after surgery were investigated, and links between postoperative morbidity and patient characteristics and outcomes were assessed. Postoperative morbidities were divided into five grades based on the Clavien-Dindo classification, and major morbidities were defined as Clavien-Dindo ≥ 3. Univariate and multivariate Cox regression analyses were used to evaluate the risk factors for recurrence-free survival (RFS) and overall survival (OS).

RESULTS

Postoperative morbidity occurred in 146 out of 239 patients (61.1%). Multivariate

logistic regression revealed that cirrhosis, intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL, diabetes mellitus, and obesity were independent risk factors. Postoperative morbidity was associated with decreased OS and RFS (OS: 18.0 mo *vs* 31.0 mo, respectively, $P = 0.003$; RFS: 16.0 mo *vs* 26.0 mo, respectively, $P = 0.002$). Multivariate Cox regression analysis indicated that postoperative morbidity was independently associated with decreased OS [hazard ratios (HR): 1.557, 95% confidence interval (CI): 1.119-2.167, $P = 0.009$] and RFS (HR: 1.535, 95%CI: 1.117-2.108, $P = 0.008$). Moreover, major morbidity was independently associated with decreased OS (HR: 2.175; 95%CI: 1.470-3.216, $P < 0.001$) and RFS (HR: 2.054; 95%CI: 1.400-3.014, $P < 0.001$) after curative resection for HCCA.

CONCLUSION

Postoperative morbidity (especially major morbidity) may be an independent risk factor for unfavorable prognosis in HCCA patients following curative resection.

Key Words: Hilar cholangiocarcinoma; Morbidity; Surgery; Oncology; Survival; Recurrence

Core Tip: In this study, postoperative morbidity was found to be an independent risk factor for poor overall survival and recurrence-free survival following curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. In addition, this study revealed the independent risk factors associated with increased postoperative morbidity, which could help to reduce the incidence of postoperative morbidity and improve oncological prognosis.

Citation: Liu ZP, Chen WY, Zhang YQ, Jiang Y, Bai J, Pan Y, Zhong SY, Zhong YP, Chen ZY, Dai HS. Postoperative morbidity adversely impacts oncological prognosis after curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 948-960
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/948.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.948

INTRODUCTION

Cholangiocarcinoma is a common malignancy of the liver, second only to hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in incidence and accounting for approximately 10% of primary liver tumors[1,2]. Hilar cholangiocarcinoma (HCCA), also referred to as a Klatskin tumor, represents 60% of cholangiocarcinomas[3]. The HCCA incidence is increasing, and tumors have a poorer prognosis than any other hepatobiliary tumor, such as HCC, with five-year survival rates of 20% to 40%[4,5]. Radical surgery offers a possible cure for eligible HCCA patients. However, the oncological prognosis after liver resection for HCCA is often uncertain, as the tumor recurs within five years in over 60% of patients[6,7]. Consequently, identifying the risk factors that influence HCCA recurrence is important to improve outcomes.

Previous studies have demonstrated that postoperative morbidity is linked to greater recurrence and lower survival rates than many other gastrointestinal tumors, such as HCC[8], pancreatic[9], gastric[10,11], and colorectal carcinomas[12,13], as well as intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma[14]. Systemic inflammation may result from postoperative morbidity, which could, in turn, reduce the effectiveness of the immune response against the tumor[15]. This may explain the relationship between poorer prognosis and postoperative morbidity. Regrettably, because HCCA surgery is one of the most complicated operations in hepatobiliary surgery, there is a high incidence of postoperative morbidity, ranging from 30% to 70%[16]. Postoperative morbidity is linked to both surgical factors and patients' underlying diseases[17-19]. From our point of view, surgery should be both safe and effective, avoiding postoperative morbidity to improve oncological prognosis. However, few studies have investigated the effects of postoperative morbidity on oncological prognosis in patients with HCCA after curative resection.

Therefore, this study aimed to determine if there is a link between the presence of postoperative morbidity and oncological prognosis following curative resection for HCCA. Additionally, the study assessed the independent risk factors for the occurrence of postoperative morbidity.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

The data of patients with HCCA who had undergone curative resection for newly diagnosed HCCA between January 2010 and December 2017 at The First Affiliated Hospital of Army Medical University (Southwest Hospital) in China were collected and analyzed. The HCCA diagnosis was confirmed by postoperative pathological evaluation. Extrahepatic bile duct resection and partial hepatectomy were performed on all patients. Regardless of preoperative computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or suspicion of lymph node metastasis, all patients underwent locoregional lymphadenectomy. To achieve curative resection, combined pancreaticoduodenectomy and/or vascular resection was conducted, with curative resection classified as complete tumor (both macroscopic and microscopic) removal, with clear resection margins visible on microscopy (R0 resection). Patient exclusion criteria were: (1) Having received adjuvant chemotherapy and radiotherapy; (2) Unresectable tumor at exploration; (3) Having undergone R1 or R2 resection; (4) Recurrent HCCA; (5) Age < 18 years; (6) Postoperative death within 30 d; and (7) Incomplete data. The study was conducted in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki. The study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of the South-West Hospital of Chongqing, China (No. KY2021129). Patients were not required to give informed consent for the study because the analysis used anonymous clinical data that were obtained after each patient agreed to treatment by written consent.

Variables

Variables related to patients and liver pathology included age, sex, American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) score, obesity (BMI > 30), diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, and preoperative drainage. Cirrhosis was verified by postoperative histopathology. Tumor-related variables included preoperative carbohydrate antigen 19-9 (CA19-9) levels, maximum tumor size, macrovascular and microvascular invasion, peripheral nerve invasion, metastasis to lymph nodes, Bismuth type, and poorly differentiated tumors. A preoperative CA19-9 level of 150 U/L was used as a threshold to separate patients into two groups[20]. The operative variables were intraoperative blood loss, blood transfusion, and the extent of hepatectomy (minor or major). Resection of three or more Couinaud liver segments was called major hepatectomy, whereas resection of fewer segments was labeled minor hepatectomy.

Perioperative outcomes

Postoperative morbidity was classified according to the Clavien-Dindo classification[21], with minor morbidity defined as Clavien-Dindo grades I-II and major morbidity defined as grades III-V. The occurrence of postoperative morbidity within 30 d was recorded, as was the postoperative morbidity hospital stay. Morbidity included posthepatectomy liver failure (PHLF); blood, lung, abdominal, and biliary infection; pleural effusion; bile leakage; ascites; intestinal leakage cholangitis; abdominal hemorrhage; delayed gastric emptying; and wound dehiscence, among others. PHLF was recognized by the "50-50 criteria" five days or more after surgery[22]. A severe drop of > 3 g/dL in the postoperative hemoglobin level compared with the preoperative level was indicative of abdominal hemorrhage, with or without the need for transfusion and/or reoperation. Bile leakage was defined as a drain bilirubin concentration of more than three times higher than that of serum. Ascites or pleural effusions requiring diuretic administration or paracentesis were also recognized. Surgical site infection was diagnosed based on the Prevention of the National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance and Centers for Disease Control[23].

Follow-up procedures

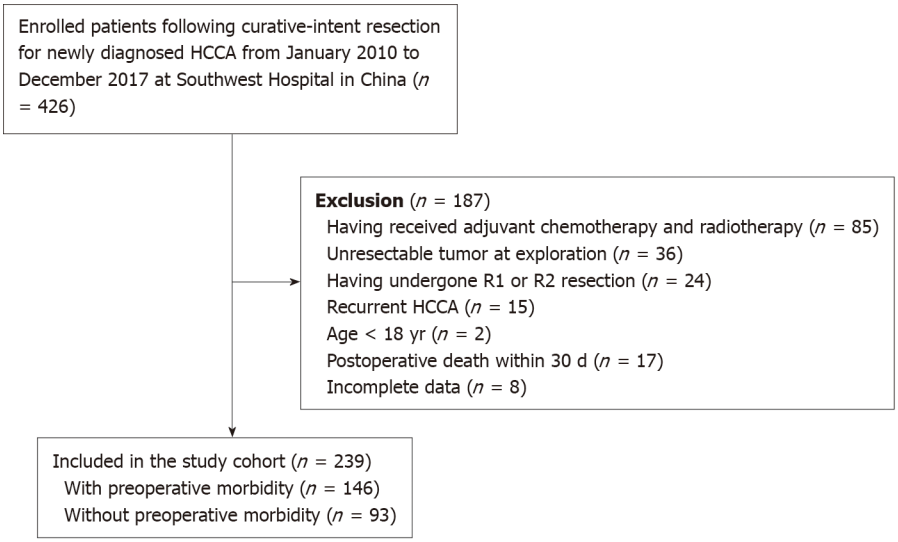
The patients were followed up at regular intervals (approximately 1-2 mo) after discharge. A standard protocol was used to evaluate the presence of HCCA recurrence. This included clinical symptoms, physical examinations, laboratory tests (liver function and tumor biomarkers), and abdominal ultrasonography. CT, MRI, or ultrasonic contrast was performed every two months after surgery or when tumor recurrence was suspected. The presence of new lesions seen on MRI or CT was defined as recurrence that was treated by surgery, drugs, or supportive therapy.

Endpoints

The primary endpoint was overall survival (OS), and the secondary endpoint was recurrence-free survival (RFS). OS was considered to be the interval from curative resection to death or last follow-up. For patients with recurrence, RFS was considered to be the interval from curative resection to the diagnosis of tumor recurrence. For patients without recurrence, RFS was taken as the interval from curative resection to death or last follow-up. Until the study's termination on July 15, 2020, all patients were followed up on until death or loss to follow-up.

Statistical analysis

Continuous variables are expressed as the means ± SD or medians (range), and categorical variables are expressed as the frequencies and percentages. Student's t test or the Mann–Whitney U test was used for



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.948

Figure 1 Selection of the study population. HCCA: Hilar cholangiocarcinoma.

continuous variables, and Pearson's chi-square test was used for categorical variables. The Kaplan–Meier method and log-rank test were used to calculate and compare the OS and RFS rates. Variables showing significance levels of $P < 0.1$ on univariate analyses were used for multivariate analysis by the Cox proportional hazard model. In univariate and multivariate Cox regression studies, hazard ratios (HRs) and their 95 percent confidence intervals (CIs) were calculated. SPSS® version 26.0 (IBM, Armonk, New York, United States) was used for statistical analysis. *P* values were two-sided, and statistical significance was defined as a *P* value of less than 0.05.

RESULTS

Perioperative outcomes

In our study, 239 patients were included based on established inclusion criteria (Figure 1). All patients performed open surgery. Table 1 presents the perioperative outcomes for the 239 patients. Of these patients, 146 (61.1%) experienced morbidity within 30 d of surgery, with minor morbidity occurring in 78 (32.6%) and major morbidity in 68 (28.5%) patients. The top three causes of morbidity were surgical site infection (36/239, 15.1%), bile leak (32/239, 13.4%), and pleural effusion (24/239, 10.0%).

Patient characteristics

Table 2 shows the comparisons of patients' clinicopathologic and operative variables between those with and without postoperative morbidity. Notably, obesity, diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, and intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL were more common in patients with morbidity ($P < 0.05$).

Risk factors for postoperative morbidity

In the multiple logistic regression model using significant ($P < 0.1$) factors shown in Table 2, cirrhosis [odds ratio (OR): 2.867; 95%CI: 1.207-6.810; $P = 0.017$], intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL (OR: 2.240; 95%CI: 1.162-4.318; $P = 0.016$), diabetes mellitus (OR: 3.395; 95%CI: 1.082-10.651; $P = 0.036$), and obesity (OR: 3.694; 95%CI: 1.197-11.394; $P = 0.023$) were identified as independent risk factors for postoperative morbidity (Table 3).

Survival outcomes

Table 4 shows the relationships between the patient survival outcomes and perioperative morbidity. Over the median 19.0-mo follow-up period, tumor recurrence and death were apparent in 76.7% (112/146) and 71.9% (105/146), respectively, of patients with postoperative morbidity and in 64.5% (60/93) and 59.1% (55/93), respectively, of patients who did not experience morbidity (recurrence, $P = 0.041$; death, $P = 0.041$). The median OS and RFS were significantly lower in the patients with postoperative morbidity, as shown in Figure 2 (OS: 18.0 mo *vs* 31.0 mo, $P = 0.003$; RFS: 16.0 mo *vs* 26.0 mo, $P = 0.002$).

Table 1 Postoperative outcomes of 239 patients who underwent curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma

Postoperative outcomes (*n* = 239)	Patients (%)
Postoperative 30-d morbidity	146 (61.1)
Minor morbidity (Clavien-Dindo grade I-II)	78 (32.6)
Major morbidity (Clavien-Dindo grade III-IV)	68 (28.5)
Types of postoperative 30-d morbidity	
PHLF	15 (6.3)
Blood infection	14 (5.9)
Lung infection	12 (5.0)
Bile leakage	32 (13.4)
Pleural effusion	24 (10.0)
Ascites	4 (1.7)
Intestines leak	9 (3.8)
Abdominal hemorrhage	10 (6.8)
Delayed gastric emptying	17 (7.1)
Surgical site infection	36 (15.1)
Others	11 (4.6)
Postoperative hospital stay, days[1]	19 (15, 26)

[1]Values are median (interquartile range).
PHLF: Post-hepatectomy liver failure.

Prognostic factors for survival

Tables 5 and 6 present the results of the univariate and multivariate Cox regression analyses, respectively, for survival prediction. The multivariate analysis identified postoperative morbidity was independently associated with decreased OS (HR: 1.557, 95%CI: 1.119-2.167, P = 0.009) and RFS (HR: 1.535, 95%CI: 1.117-2.108, P = 0.008). Furthermore, preoperative CA19-9 > 150 U/L, maximum tumor size > 3 cm, lymph node metastasis, macrovascular invasion, and poor tumor differentiation were also observed to be risk factors for both OS and RFS.

Furthermore, based on the severity of postoperative morbidity, major morbidity was associated with both lower OS and RFS, as shown in Figure 3 (OS: HR: 2.175; 95%CI: 1.470-3.216, P < 0.001; RFS: HR: 2.054; 95%CI: 1.400-3.014, P < 0.001).

DISCUSSION

It is difficult to verify and define the quality of surgery, whether assessed on the level of outcome, process, or system[24]. As a tumor-related surgical quality measure, postoperative morbidity has been an increasingly interesting topic. In assessing a potential link between postoperative complications and outcomes in cancer patients, it is necessary to determine the factors leading to postoperative morbidity and the level of morbidity that may result in an unfavorable outcome[25]. Postoperative morbidity, therefore, is an indication of the quality of the surgery and may also act as a reliable prognostication of outcomes with the potential for therapeutic application. Thus, to reduce the incidence of perioperative morbidity, it is important to identify its contributory factors.

Here, we examined the prognostic impacts of 30-d morbidity in 239 HCCA patients after curative resection. The findings showed that perioperative morbidity negatively impacted both OS and RFS, indicating the value of reducing postoperative morbidity to improve patient outcomes. In this study, postoperative morbidity occurred in 146 (61.1%) patients, of which 68 (28.5%) experienced major morbidity. These findings support those of other studies. Hasegawa *et al*[19] observed a major postoperative complication (grade 3 or more) rate of 46.8%[26]. Gerhards *et al*[27] described a postoperative morbidity rate of 65.0% in patients following hemihepatectomy[27], while Dar *et al*[28] observed complications in approximately 66.7% of patients within 90 d[28]. In addition, a study from Japan observed that 21 patients (35.0%) had remarkable postoperative complications, while the presence of complications predicted worse outcomes in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma patients[14]. A large-

Table 2 Comparisons of patients' clinicopathologic and operative variables between those with and without postoperative morbidity

Variables	Total (*n* = 239)	Without postoperative morbidity (*n* = 93)	With postoperative morbidity (*n* = 146)	*P* value
Age > 60 yr	54 (22.6)	22 (23.7)	32 (21.9)	0.754
Male sex	144 (60.3)	54 (58.1)	90 (61.6)	0.581
ASA score > 2	23 (9.6)	6 (6.5)	17 (11.6)	0.185
Obesity	28 (11.7)	4 (4.3)	24 (16.4)	0.004
Diabetes mellitus	24 (10.0)	4 (4.3)	20 (13.7)	0.018
Cirrhosis	39 (16.3)	8 (8.6)	31 (21.2)	0.010
Preoperative CA19-9 > 150 U/L	129 (54.0)	44 (47.3)	85 (58.2)	0.099
Maximum tumor size > 3 cm	68 (25.8)	21 (22.6)	47 (32.2)	0.108
Macrovascular invasion	144 (60.3)	55 (59.1)	89 (61.0)	0.779
Microvascular invasion	85 (35.6)	28 (30.1)	57 (39.0)	0.160
Peripheral nerve invasion	80 (33.5)	30 (32.3)	50 (34.2)	0.751
Poor tumor differentiation	77 (32.2)	29 (31.2)	48 (32.9)	0.785
Intraoperative blood transfusion	159 (66.5)	57 (61.3)	102 (69.9)	0.171
Intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL	185 (77.4)	65 (69.9)	120 (82.2)	0.027
Major hepatectomy	171 (71.5)	65 (69.9)	106 (72.6)	0.651
Hepatic artery reconstruction	12 (5.0)	5 (5.4)	7 (4.8)	0.841
Portal vein reconstruction	45 (19.6)	22 (23.7)	23 (15.8)	0.128
Pringle maneuver	175 (73.2)	73 (78.5)	102 (69.9)	0.142
Number of examined LNs > 4	125 (52.3)	52 (55.9)	73 (50.0)	0.372
LN metastasis	54 (22.6)	18 (19.4)	36 (24.7)	0.339
Bismuth type, III-IV	135 (56.5)	52 (55.9)	83 (56.8)	0.887
Preoperative drainage	71 (29.7)	28 (30.1)	43 (29.5)	0.914

ASA: American Society of Anesthesiologists; CA19-9: Carbohydrate antigen 19-9; LN: Lymph node.

Table 3 Univariable and multivariable logistic regression analyses of risk factors associated with postoperative morbidity following curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma

Variables	Multivariable analyses[1]	
	P value	OR (95%CI)
Obesity	0.023	3.694 (1.197-11.394)
Diabetes mellitus	0.036	3.395 (1.082-10.651)
Cirrhosis	0.017	2.867 (1.207-6.810)
Preoperative CA19-9 > 150 U/L	0.155	1.493 (0.859-2.593)
Intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL	0.016	2.240 (1.162-4.318)

[1]Factors with $P < 0.1$ in Table 2 were applied to multiple logistic regression model.
CA19-9: Carbohydrate antigen 19-9; CI: Confidence interval; OR: Odds ratio.

sample multicenter study from China indicated that 758 (35.1%) out of 2161 HCC patients experienced morbidity within 30 d, and the median OS and time-to-recurrence in these patients were poorer (48.1 mo *vs* 91.6 mo and 19.8 mo *vs* 46.1 mo, respectively)[8]. However, no studies have investigated the link between postoperative morbidity and prognosis in HCCA patients.

Table 4 Comparisons of survival outcomes between patients with and without postoperative morbidity

Survival outcomes	Total (*n* = 239)	Without postoperative morbidity (*n* = 93)	With postoperative morbidity (*n* = 146)	*P* value
Period of follow-up, months[1]	19.0 (11.0, 34.0)	15.0 (23.0, 41.0)	16.0 (9.8, 30.0)	0.001
Death during the follow-up	160 (66.9)	55 (59.1)	105 (71.9)	0.041
Recurrence during the follow-up	172 (72.0)	60 (64.5)	112 (76.7)	0.041
OS, months[2]	23.0 (20.0-26.0)	31.0 (22.4-39.6)	18.0 (13.0-23.0)	0.003
1-yr OS rate, %	73.4	83.8	66.7	
3-yr OS rate, %	34.0	45.5	26.7	
5-yr OS rate, %	22.9	31.7	17.0	
RFS, month[2]	19.0 (16.1-21.9)	26.0 (14.1-37.9)	16.0 (12.2-19.8)	0.002
1-yr RFS rate, %	64.6	75.1	54.3	
3-yr RFS rate, %	28.7	40.8	22.4	
5-yr RFS rate, %	18.2	30.4	13.3	

[1]Values are median (interquartile range).
[2]Values are median and 95% confidence interval.
OS: Overall survival; RFS: Recurrence-free survival.

Both clinicopathological and operative variables were found to differ significantly in relation to postoperative morbidity, including obesity, diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, and intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL. Many previous studies have used propensity score matching to balance the intergroup baseline features in evaluating the effect of postoperative complications on outcomes[29,30]. However, as postoperative 30-d morbidity is itself a short-term outcome, it is not appropriate to adopt this statistical approach, which may increase, rather than decrease, selection bias between the groups. In contrast, classical statistical approaches are appropriate to determine the link between postoperative morbidity and outcomes with adjustment for confounding factors.

It is important to identify the risk factors for postoperative morbidity to reduce its incidence. Here, we specifically investigated the independent risk factors for morbidity and identified obesity, diabetes mellitus, cirrhosis, and intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL. These findings are significant for guiding clinical practice. Similar conclusions have been reported; for example, a major morbidity rate of 40% was observed after liver resection in obese or overweight patients[31,32]. There is evidence to explain this phenomenon, namely, hepatic steatosis associated with obesity may adversely affect the regeneration of liver remnants and thus influence morbidity[33]. During the perioperative period, obese patients should be instructed by dieticians to adjust their dietary habits and properly match their nutritional structure. It is known that obesity is closely related to chronic liver diseases, such as steatosis, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, and other comorbidities, including diabetes[34]. Moreover, the presence of diabetes mellitus is known to be linked to postoperative complications after HCCA surgery [35]. For severe diabetes, the clinician needs to effectively control blood glucose levels before surgery with the assistance of endocrinologists. In addition to the above two risk groups related to metabolism, for patients with cirrhosis, due to their worse liver function, surgeons should evaluate the remaining liver volume and reserve function more carefully before surgery and pay more attention to the prevention of complications, including PHLF, pleural effusion, abdominal hemorrhage, and biliary infection. Notably, cirrhosis may cause poor blood coagulation, making it more difficult to control the amount of bleeding during surgery[36]. For patients with poor liver function and coagulation dysfunction, intraoperative infusion of plasma or cryoprecipitate may help to reduce intraoperative bleeding. For patients with severe liver cirrhosis, the surgeon should use Pringle's maneuver to obstruct the temporary hilar of the liver for hepatectomy. In addition, the anesthetist should ensure low central venous pressure to reduce the amount of bleeding during the surgery. Moreover, the vast majority of intraoperative bleeding occurs during liver resection. With new medical advances, many kinds of instruments can be used for liver resection: Ultrasonic knife, electrocautery (bipolar, monopolar, or water sealed bipolar), and radiofrequency-assisted liver resection. However, which can better prevent intraoperative bleeding may be related to the patient's liver condition and the operator's habits, and it is worthy of further study. As this study showed that postoperative morbidity (especially major morbidity) can affect the oncological prognosis of HCCA after curative resection, adjusting the above risk factors can reduce complications and also improve the prognosis of patients. In our opinion, only through multidisciplinary treatment can we reduce the postoperative morbidity of patients who undergo curative HCCA resection.

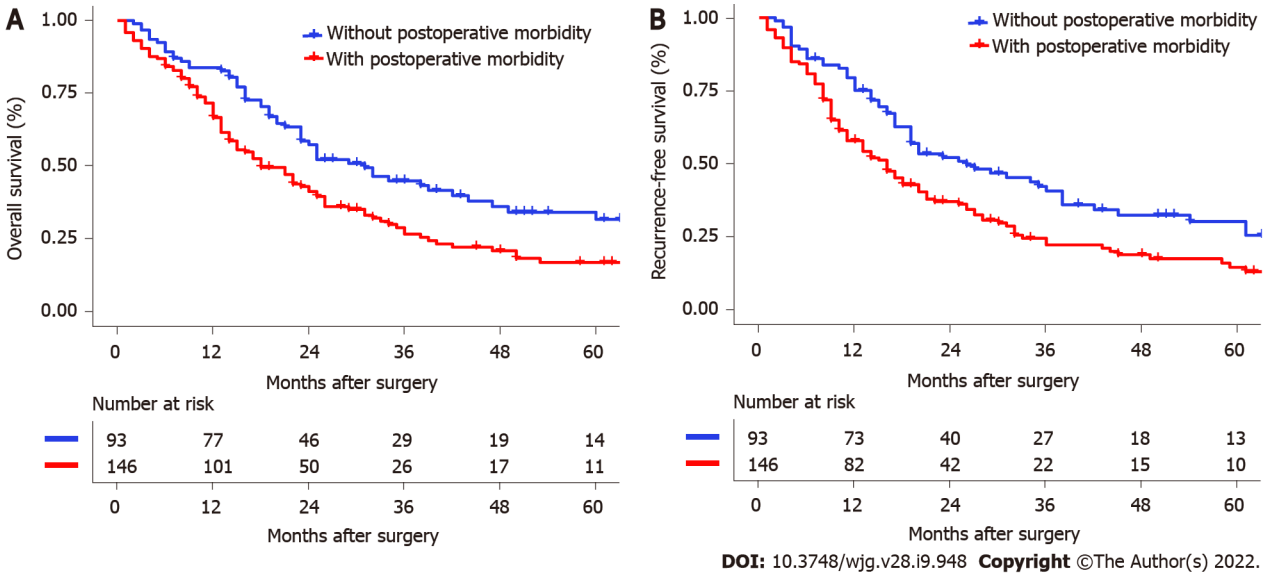
Table 5 Univariable and multivariable Cox regression analyses of risk factors associated with overall survival following curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma

Variables	Univariable analyses		Multivariable analyses[1]	
	P value	HR (95%CI)	*P* value	HR (95%CI)
Age > 60 yr	0.341	1.190 (0.832-1.730)		
Male sex	0.754	1.052 (0.766-1.445)		
ASA score > 2	0.333	1.282 (0.775-2.120)		
Obesity	0.772	0.928 (0.561-1.536)		
Diabetes mellitus	0.063	1.595 (0.975-2.609)	0.288	1.324 (0.789-2.224)
Cirrhosis	0.222	1.283 (0.861-1.912)		
Preoperative CA19-9 > 150 U/L	0.009	1.522 (1.112-2.083)	0.015	1.485 (1.079-2.044)
Maximum tumor size > 3 cm	< 0.001	1.809 (1.296-2.525)	0.001	1.805 (1.290-2.526)
Macrovascular invasion	0.014	1.507 (1.088-2.087)	0.012	1.527 (1.099-2.122)
Microvascular invasion	0.005	1.588 (1.151-2.192)	0.102	1.324 (0.946-1.853)
Peripheral nerve invasion	0.663	1.075 (0.776-1.488)		
Poor tumor differentiation	0.005	1.608 (1.158-2.231)	0.003	1.654 (1.188-2.302)
Intraoperative blood transfusion	0.316	1.186 (0.850-1.654)		
Intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL	0.593	1.108 (0.761-1.612)		
Major hepatectomy	0.634	1.087 (0.771-1.531)		
LN metastasis	0.016	1.551 (1.086-2.215)	0.021	1.527 (1.067-2.186)
Bismuth type, III-IV	0.346	1.163 (0.849-1.593)		
Preoperative drainage	0.721	0.939 (0.665-1.326)		
Postoperative morbidity	0.003	1.635 (1.178-2.269)	0.009	1.557 (1.119-2.167)

[1]Those variables found significant at $P < 0.100$ in univariable analyses were entered into multivariable Cox regression analyses.
ASA: American Society of Anesthesiologists; CA19-9: Carbohydrate antigen 19-9; CI: Confidence interval; HR: Hazard ratio; LN: Lymph node.

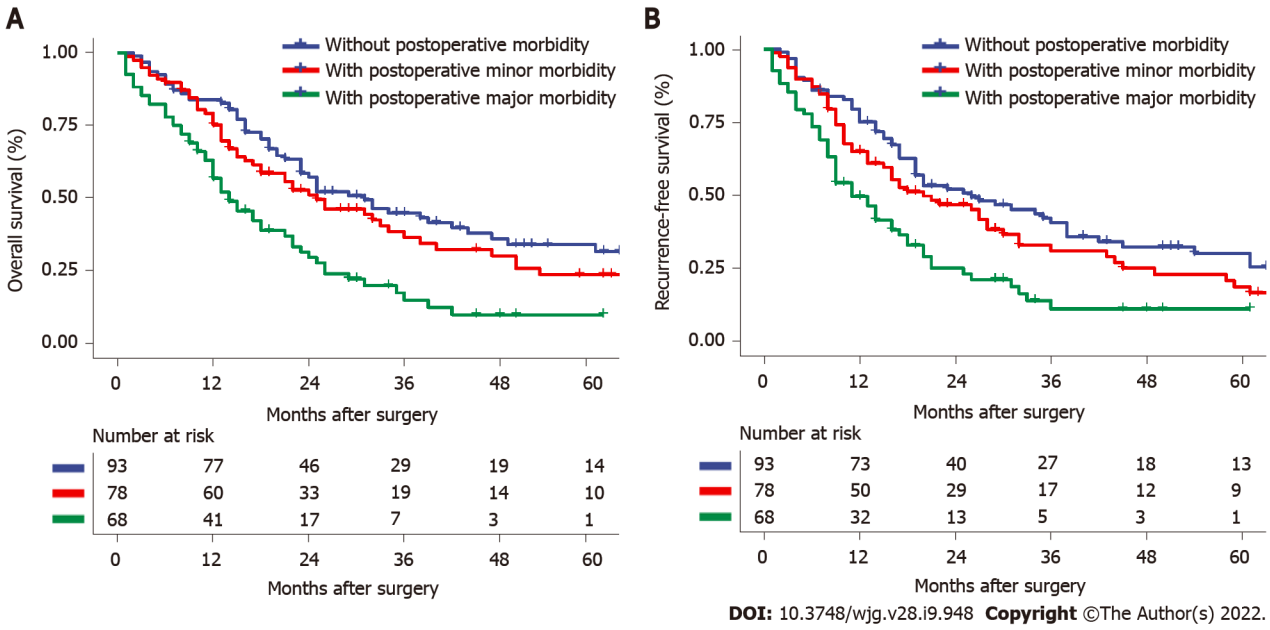
In other cancers, postoperative morbidity may be an independent predictor of poor prognostic outcome, including colorectal liver metastasis[37], HCC[8,38,39], pancreatic cancer[40], and esophageal cancer[41]. Although the precise association between postoperative morbidity and unfavorable prognostic outcomes remains to be elucidated, there are several possible explanations. Previous studies have shown that major surgery can induce systemic inflammation, with increased secretion of inflammatory cytokines, including interleukin-1 and interleukin-6, which contributes to cancer angiogenesis, proliferation, growth, and metastases[42-44]. In addition, severe systematic inflammation caused by postoperative morbidity may lead to an immunosuppressive condition and state, which can regulate the reduction of tumor monitoring and may lead to both metastasis and disease-specific death[15,42]. Notably, the postoperative stress response can inhibit cell-mediated immune function. Consequently, during the period of postoperative morbidity and relative immunosuppression caused by postoperative stress, residual malignant cells may proliferate[45]. Therefore, postoperative 30-d morbidity may negatively impact long-term oncological outcomes.

There are several limitations to this study. Specifically, it was a single-institution study with a retrospective design. Despite this, the database was established by standardized surgical techniques and perioperative management, thus preventing some limitations of multicenter, population-based, or national studies. Nevertheless, the impact of postoperative morbidity on the prognosis of HCCA patients still requires evaluation using a larger prospective study. In addition, in this study, patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy and radiotherapy were excluded. Some previous studies have demonstrated a benefit of prognosis for patients following surgery who received postoperative adjuvant therapy[46,47]. However, adjuvant therapy cannot be administered immediately when morbidities occur after surgery. As a result, we believed it was better to exclude patients who received adjuvant therapy to more accurately reflect the impact of postoperative complications on prognosis.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.948

Figure 2 Overall survival and recurrence-free survival curve comparisons between patients without and with postoperative morbidity. A: Overall survival, $P = 0.003$; B: Recurrence-free survival, $P = 0.002$.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.948

Figure 3 Overall survival and recurrence-free survival curve comparisons among patients without postoperative morbidity, with minor postoperative morbidity, and with major postoperative morbidity. A: Overall survival, $P = 0.231$ (with minor postoperative morbidity *vs* without postoperative morbidity), $P < 0.001$ (with major postoperative morbidity *vs* without postoperative morbidity); B: Recurrence-free survival, $P = 0.132$ (with minor postoperative morbidity *vs* without postoperative morbidity), $P < 0.001$ (with major postoperative morbidity *vs* without postoperative morbidity).

CONCLUSION

In summary, the results of this study clearly show that postoperative morbidity both lessens long-term survival and raises tumor recurrence in HCCA patients following curative resection. Independent risk factors for postoperative morbidity included diabetes, obesity, liver cirrhosis, and intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL. Clinicians should further optimize preoperative management, surgical procedures, and perioperative care to prevent complications and thus improve both short-term and long-term oncological prognoses.

Table 6 Univariable and multivariable Cox regression analyses of risk factors associated with recurrence-free survival following curative resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma

Variables	Univariable analyses		Multivariable analyses[1]	
	P value	HR (95%CI)	*P* value	HR (95%CI)
Age > 60 yr	0.330	1.201 (0.850-1.696)		
Male sex	0.998	1.002 (0.793-1.136)		
ASA score > 2	0.457	1.210 (0.732-1.997)		
Obesity	0.911	0.973 (0.604-1.568)		
Diabetes mellitus	0.035	1.654 (1.036-2.264)	0.177	1.403 (0.858-2.295)
Cirrhosis	0.247	1.260 (0.852-1.863)		
Preoperative CA19-9 > 150 U/L	0.002	1.617 (1.193-2.192)	0.012	1.487 (1.092-2.024)
Maximum tumor size > 3 cm	0.002	1.695 (1.223-2.351)	0.002	1.665 (1.198-2.314)
Macrovascular invasion	0.008	1.534 (1.120-2.100)	0.011	1.514 (1.101-2.081)
Microvascular invasion	0.009	1.524 (1.118-2.088)	0.121	1.295 (0.934-1.794)
Peripheral nerve invasion	0.683	1.068 (0.780-1.462)		
Poor tumor differentiation	0.007	1.547 (1.124-2.129)	0.006	1.575 (1.141-2.173)
Intraoperative blood transfusion	0.251	1.208 (0.875-1.668)		
Intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL	0.819	1.043 (0.729-1.490)		
Major hepatectomy	0.978	0.995 (0.718-1.379)		
LN metastasis	0.010	1.573 (1.114-2.220)	0.017	1.528 (1.080-2.157)
Bismuth type, III-IV	0.788	1.042 (0.771-1.410)		
Preoperative drainage	0.517	0.895 (0.640-1.252)		
Postoperative morbidity	0.003	1.169 (1.180-2.220)	0.008	1.535 (1.117-2.108)

[1]Those variables found significant at $P < 0.100$ in univariable analyses were entered into multivariable Cox regression analyses.

ASA: American Society of Anesthesiologists; CA19-9: Carbohydrate antigen 19-9; CI: Confidence interval; HR: Hazard ratio; LN: Lymph node.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Postoperative complications after surgery for hilar cholangiocarcinoma (HCCA) are common; but, whether it has an adverse impact on oncological prognosis is still unknown.

Research motivation

Our study aimed to determine whether there is an association between the presence of postoperative complication and oncological prognosis following surgery for HCCA. Moreover, our study assessed the independent risk factors for the occurrence of postoperative complication.

Research objectives

We aimed to evaluate the influence of postoperative morbidity on tumor recurrence and mortality after curative resection for HCCA.

Research methods

Patients with diagnosed HCCA following curative resection between January 2010 and December 2017 at our hospital were enrolled. The independent risk factors for postoperative comlication within 30 d after surgery were investigated, and links between postoperative morbidity and patient characteristics and survival outcomes were assessed. Postoperative morbidities were divided into five grades according to the Clavien-Dindo classification, and major morbidities were defined as Clavien-Dindo ≥ 3. Univariate and multivariate Cox regression analyses were used to evaluate the risk factors for recurrence-free survival (RFS) and overall survival (OS).

Research results

Postoperative complication occurred in 146 out of 239 patients (61.1%). Multivariate logistic regression revealed that cirrhosis, intraoperative blood loss > 500 mL, diabetes mellitus, and obesity were independently associated with postoperative complication. And, postoperative complication was associated with decreased OS and RFS (OS: 18.0 mo *vs* 31.0 mo, respectively, $P = 0.003$; RFS: 16.0 mo *vs* 26.0 mo, respectively, $P = 0.002$). Multivariate Cox regression analysis indicated that postoperative morbidity was independently associated with decreased OS [hazard ratios (HR): 1.557, 95% confidence interval (CI): 1.119-2.167, $P = 0.009$] and RFS (HR: 1.535, 95%CI: 1.117-2.108, $P = 0.008$). Moreover, major morbidity was independently associated with decreased OS (HR: 2.175; 95%CI: 1.470-3.216, $P < 0.001$) and RFS (HR: 2.054; 95%CI: 1.400-3.014, $P < 0.001$) after curative resection for HCCA.

Research conclusions

Postoperative complication (especially major complication) may be independently associated with poor prognosis in HCCA patients following curative resection.

Research perspectives

Clinicians should further optimize preoperative management, surgical procedures, and perioperative care to prevent complications and thus improve both short-term and long-term oncological prognoses.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Dai HS had full access to all the data in the study and take responsibility for the integrity of the data and accuracy of the data analyses; Liu ZP, Chen ZY, Zhang YQ, Chen WY, Bai J, and Jiang Y contributed to the study concept and design; Liu ZP, Chen ZY, Zhang YQ, Chen WY, Zhong SY, Zhong YP, and Pan Y contributed to the acquisition, analyses, or interpretation of data; Liu ZP, Dai HS, Chen ZY, and Zhang YQ drafted the manuscript; Dai HS, Chen ZY, and Zhang YQ contributed to the critical revision of the manuscript for the important intellectual content; Liu ZP, Dai HS, and Zhang YQ performed the statistical analyses; Dai HS contributed to the study supervision.

Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81874211; and Personalized Training of Key Support Objects for The Talent People of The Army Medical University, No. XZ-2019-505-014.

Institutional review board statement: The study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of the South-West Hospital of Chongqing, China, No. KY2021129.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Nothing to disclose.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at daihaisu@163.com. Participants gave informed consent for data sharing.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Zhi-Peng Liu 0000-0001-7652-1783; Wei-Yue Chen 0000-0001-6922-8888; Yan-Qi Zhang 0000-0001-9438-0953; Yan Jiang 0000-0003-4628-7150; Jie Bai 0000-0003-3031-8434; Yu Pan 0000-0003-3827-2418; Shi-Yun Zhong 0000-0001-7148-8777; Yun-Ping Zhong 0000-0001-9027-6104; Zhi-Yu Chen 0000-0002-1321-1793; Hai-Su Dai 0000-0001-9896-6249.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Fan JR

REFERENCES

1 **Blechacz B**. Cholangiocarcinoma: Current Knowledge and New Developments. *Gut Liver* 2017; **11**: 13-26 [PMID: 27928095 DOI: 10.5009/gnl15568]
2 **Robles R**, Sánchez-Bueno F, Ramírez P, Brusadin R, Parrilla P. Liver transplantation for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 9209-9215 [PMID: 24409049 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i48.9209]
3 **Klatskin G**. Adenocarcinoma of the hepatic duct at its bifurcation within the porta hepatis. An unusual tumor with

distinctive clinical and pathological features. *Am J Med* 1965; **38**: 241-256 [PMID: 14256720 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(65)90178-6]
4 **Ramos Rubio E**. [Radical surgery for hilar cholangiocarcinoma (Klatskin tumor)]. *Cir Esp* 2007; **82**: 11-15 [PMID: 17580025 DOI: 10.1016/s0009-739x(07)71654-8]
5 **Lau SH**, Lau WY. Current therapy of hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2012; **11**: 12-17 [PMID: 22251465 DOI: 10.1016/s1499-3872(11)60119-7]
6 **Hu HJ**, Jin YW, Shrestha A, Ma WJ, Wang JK, Liu F, Zhu YY, Zhou RX, Regmi P, Cheng NS, Li FY. Predictive factors of early recurrence after R0 resection of hilar cholangiocarcinoma: A single institution experience in China. *Cancer Med* 2019; **8**: 1567-1575 [PMID: 30868740 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.2052]
7 **Liu ZP**, Zhang QY, Chen WY, Huang YY, Zhang YQ, Gong Y, Jiang Y, Bai J, Chen ZY, Dai HS. Evaluation of Four Lymph Node Classifications for the Prediction of Survival in Hilar Cholangiocarcinoma. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2022 [PMID: 34973138 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-021-05211-x]
8 **Li LQ**, Liang L, Sun LY, Li C, Wu H, Zhang YM, Zhang WG, Wang H, Zhou YH, Gu WM, Chen TH, Li J, Liang YJ, Xu QR, Diao YK, Jia HD, Wang MD, Zhang CW, Shen F, Huang DS, Yang T. Postoperative morbidity adversely impacts long-term oncologic prognosis following hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma: A multicenter observational study. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2021; **47**: 2551-2560 [PMID: 33934940 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2021.04.027]
9 **Ridwelski K**, Meyer F, Schmidt U, Lippert H. [Results of surgical treatment in ampullary and pancreatic carcinoma and its prognostic parameters after R0-resection]. *Zentralbl Chir* 2005; **130**: 353-361 [PMID: 16103961 DOI: 10.1055/s-2005-836794]
10 **Li QG**, Li P, Tang D, Chen J, Wang DR. Impact of postoperative complications on long-term survival after radical resection for gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4060-4065 [PMID: 23840153 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i25.4060]
11 **Kanda M**, Ito S, Mochizuki Y, Teramoto H, Ishigure K, Murai T, Asada T, Ishiyama A, Matsushita H, Tanaka C, Kobayashi D, Fujiwara M, Murotani K, Kodera Y. Multi-institutional analysis of the prognostic significance of postoperative complications after curative resection for gastric cancer. *Cancer Med* 2019; **8**: 5194-5201 [PMID: 31353821 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.2439]
12 **Zimmermann MS**, Wellner U, Laubert T, Ellebrecht DB, Bruch HP, Keck T, Schlöricke E, Benecke CR. Influence of Anastomotic Leak After Elective Colorectal Cancer Resection on Survival and Local Recurrence: A Propensity Score Analysis. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2019; **62**: 286-293 [PMID: 30540662 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000001287]
13 **Nordholm-Carstensen A**, Rolff HC, Krarup PM. Differential Impact of Anastomotic Leak in Patients With Stage IV Colonic or Rectal Cancer: A Nationwide Cohort Study. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2017; **60**: 497-507 [PMID: 28383449 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000000761]
14 **Miyata T**, Yamashita YI, Yamao T, Umezaki N, Tsukamoto M, Kitano Y, Yamamura K, Arima K, Kaida T, Nakagawa S, Imai K, Hashimoto D, Chikamoto A, Ishiko T, Baba H. Prognostic impacts of postoperative complications in patients with intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma after curative operations. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2017; **22**: 526-532 [PMID: 28205002 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-017-1099-9]
15 **Balkwill F**, Mantovani A. Inflammation and cancer: back to Virchow? *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 539-545 [PMID: 11229684 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)04046-0]
16 **van Keulen AM**, Buettner S, Besselink MG, Busch OR, van Gulik TM, Ijzermans JNM, de Jonge J, Polak WG, Swijnenburg RJ, Groot Koerkamp B, Erdmann JI, Olthof PB. Surgical morbidity in the first year after resection for perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2021; **23**: 1607-1614 [PMID: 33947606 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2021.03.016]
17 **Ribero D**, Zimmitti G, Aloia TA, Shindoh J, Fabio F, Amisano M, Passot G, Ferrero A, Vauthey JN. Preoperative Cholangitis and Future Liver Remnant Volume Determine the Risk of Liver Failure in Patients Undergoing Resection for Hilar Cholangiocarcinoma. *J Am Coll Surg* 2016; **223**: 87-97 [PMID: 27049784 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2016.01.060]
18 **Kennedy TJ**, Yopp A, Qin Y, Zhao B, Guo P, Liu F, Schwartz LH, Allen P, D'Angelica M, Fong Y, DeMatteo RP, Blumgart LH, Jarnagin WR. Role of preoperative biliary drainage of liver remnant prior to extended liver resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2009; **11**: 445-451 [PMID: 19768150 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2009.00090.x]
19 **Hasegawa S**, Ikai I, Fujii H, Hatano E, Shimahara Y. Surgical resection of hilar cholangiocarcinoma: analysis of survival and postoperative complications. *World J Surg* 2007; **31**: 1256-1263 [PMID: 17453285 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-007-9001-y]
20 **Wang JK**, Hu HJ, Shrestha A, Ma WJ, Yang Q, Liu F, Cheng NS, Li FY. Can preoperative and postoperative CA19-9 levels predict survival and early recurrence in patients with resectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma? *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 45335-45344 [PMID: 28484084 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.17336]
21 **Dindo D**, Demartines N, Clavien PA. Classification of surgical complications: a new proposal with evaluation in a cohort of 6336 patients and results of a survey. *Ann Surg* 2004; **240**: 205-213 [PMID: 15273542 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000133083.54934.ae]
22 **Balzan S**, Belghiti J, Farges O, Ogata S, Sauvanet A, Delefosse D, Durand F. The "50-50 criteria" on postoperative day 5: an accurate predictor of liver failure and death after hepatectomy. *Ann Surg* 2005; **242**: 824-828, discussion 828 [PMID: 16327492 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000189131.90876.9e]
23 **National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System**. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance (NNIS) System Report, data summary from January 1992 through June 2004, issued October 2004. *Am J Infect Control* 2004; **32**: 470-485 [PMID: 15573054 DOI: 10.1016/S0196655304005425]
24 **Takahashi Y**, Ebata T, Yokoyama Y, Igami T, Sugawara G, Nagino M. Surgical treatment of perihilar cholangiocarcinoma in octogenarians: a single center experience. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2013; **20**: 324-331 [PMID: 22706427 DOI: 10.1007/s00534-012-0529-3]
25 **Best WR**, Khuri SF, Phelan M, Hur K, Henderson WG, Demakis JG, Daley J. Identifying patient preoperative risk factors and postoperative adverse events in administrative databases: results from the Department of Veterans Affairs National Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *J Am Coll Surg* 2002; **194**: 257-266 [PMID: 11893128 DOI: 10.1016/s1072-7515(01)01183-8]
26 **Zhu WH**, Xie WY, Zhang ZD, Li S, Zhang DF, Liu YJ, Zhu JY, Leng XS. Postoperative Complications and Survival

Analysis of Surgical Resection for Hilar Cholangiocarcinoma: A Retrospective Study of Fifty-Nine Consecutive Patients. *Chin Med Sci J* 2020; **35**: 157-169 [PMID: 32684236 DOI: 10.24920/003565]

27 **Gerhards MF**, van Gulik TM, de Wit LT, Obertop H, Gouma DJ. Evaluation of morbidity and mortality after resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma--a single center experience. *Surgery* 2000; **127**: 395-404 [PMID: 10776430 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2000.104250]

28 **Dar FS**, Atiq M, Shahzadi N, Ainy SK, Rana A, Bhatti ABH. Outcomes after Surgical Resection of Hilar Cholangiocarcinoma. *J Coll Physicians Surg Pak* 2019; **29**: 874-877 [PMID: 31455485 DOI: 10.29271/jcpsp.2019.09.874]

29 **Tam V**, Luketich JD, Winger DG, Sarkaria IS, Levy RM, Christie NA, Awais O, Shende MR, Nason KS. Cancer Recurrence After Esophagectomy: Impact of Postoperative Infection in Propensity-Matched Cohorts. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2016; **102**: 1638-1646 [PMID: 27353482 DOI: 10.1016/j.athoracsur.2016.04.097]

30 **Memeo R**, de Blasi V, Adam R, Goéré D, Laurent A, de'Angelis N, Piardi T, Lermite E, Herrero A, Navarro F, Sa Cunha A, Pessaux P; French colorectal liver metastases working group - Association Française de Chirurgie (AFC). Postoperative Infectious Complications Impact Long-Term Survival in Patients Who Underwent Hepatectomies for Colorectal Liver Metastases: a Propensity Score Matching Analysis. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2018; **22**: 2045-2054 [PMID: 29992519 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-018-3854-2]

31 **Langella S**, Russolillo N, Forchino F, Lo Tesoriere R, D'Eletto M, Ferrero A. Impact of obesity on postoperative outcome of hepatic resection for colorectal metastases. *Surgery* 2015; **158**: 1521-1529 [PMID: 26297057 DOI: 10.1016/j.surg.2015.07.024]

32 **Balzan S**, Nagarajan G, Farges O, Galleano CZ, Dokmak S, Paugam C, Belghiti J. Safety of liver resections in obese and overweight patients. *World J Surg* 2010; **34**: 2960-2968 [PMID: 20711580 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-010-0756-1]

33 **Paternostro R**, Sieghart W, Trauner M, Pinter M. Cancer and hepatic steatosis. *ESMO Open* 2021; **6**: 100185 [PMID: 34139486 DOI: 10.1016/j.esmoop.2021.100185]

34 **Pi-Sunyer FX**. Medical hazards of obesity. *Ann Intern Med* 1993; **119**: 655-660 [PMID: 8363192 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-119-7_part_2-199310011-00006]

35 **Kanekiyo S**, Takeda S, Iida M, Nishiyama M, Kitahara M, Shindo Y, Tokumitsu Y, Tomochika S, Tsunedomi R, Suzuki N, Abe T, Yoshino S, Hazama S, Ueno T, Nagano H. Efficacy of perioperative immunonutrition in esophageal cancer patients undergoing esophagectomy. *Nutrition* 2019; **59**: 96-102 [PMID: 30468936 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2018.08.006]

36 **Hackl C**, Schlitt HJ, Renner P, Lang SA. Liver surgery in cirrhosis and portal hypertension. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 2725-2735 [PMID: 26973411 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i9.2725]

37 **Matsuda A**, Matsumoto S, Seya T, Matsutani T, Kishi T, Yokoi K, Wang P, Uchida E. Does postoperative complication have a negative impact on long-term outcomes following hepatic resection for colorectal liver metastasis? *Ann Surg Oncol* 2013; **20**: 2485-2492 [PMID: 23620215 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-013-2972-z]

38 **Chok KS**, Ng KK, Poon RT, Lo CM, Fan ST. Impact of postoperative complications on long-term outcome of curative resection for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2009; **96**: 81-87 [PMID: 19065644 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.6358]

39 **Kusano T**, Sasaki A, Kai S, Endo Y, Iwaki K, Shibata K, Ohta M, Kitano S. Predictors and prognostic significance of operative complications in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma who underwent hepatic resection. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2009; **35**: 1179-1185 [PMID: 19443173 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2009.04.008]

40 **Aoyama T**, Murakawa M, Katayama Y, Yamaoku K, Kanazawa A, Higuchi A, Shiozawa M, Morimoto M, Yoshikawa T, Yamamoto N, Rino Y, Masuda M, Morinaga S. Impact of postoperative complications on survival and recurrence in pancreatic cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2015; **35**: 2401-2409 [PMID: 25862906]

41 **Li KK**, Wang YJ, Liu XH, Tan QY, Jiang YG, Guo W. The effect of postoperative complications on survival of patients after minimally invasive esophagectomy for esophageal cancer. *Surg Endosc* 2017; **31**: 3475-3482 [PMID: 27924395 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-016-5372-1]

42 **Wortel CH**, van Deventer SJ, Aarden LA, Lygidakis NJ, Büller HR, Hoek FJ, Horikx J, ten Cate JW. Interleukin-6 mediates host defense responses induced by abdominal surgery. *Surgery* 1993; **114**: 564-570 [PMID: 7690162]

43 **Elaraj DM**, Weinreich DM, Varghese S, Puhlmann M, Hewitt SM, Carroll NM, Feldman ED, Turner EM, Alexander HR. The role of interleukin 1 in growth and metastasis of human cancer xenografts. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 1088-1096 [PMID: 16489061 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-1603]

44 **Wong VK**, Malik HZ, Hamady ZZ, Al-Mukhtar A, Gomez D, Prasad KR, Toogood GJ, Lodge JP. C-reactive protein as a predictor of prognosis following curative resection for colorectal liver metastases. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **96**: 222-225 [PMID: 17211465 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603558]

45 **McDonald B**, Spicer J, Giannais B, Fallavollita L, Brodt P, Ferri LE. Systemic inflammation increases cancer cell adhesion to hepatic sinusoids by neutrophil mediated mechanisms. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **125**: 1298-1305 [PMID: 19431213 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24409]

46 **Grendar J**, Grendarova P, Sinha R, Dixon E. Neoadjuvant therapy for downstaging of locally advanced hilar cholangiocarcinoma: a systematic review. *HPB (Oxford)* 2014; **16**: 297-303 [PMID: 23981000 DOI: 10.1111/hpb.12150]

47 **Gerhards MF**, van Gulik TM, González González D, Rauws EA, Gouma DJ. Results of postoperative radiotherapy for resectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma. *World J Surg* 2003; **27**: 173-179 [PMID: 12616432 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-002-6434-1]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 961-972

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.961

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Relationship between clinical remission of perianal fistulas in Crohn's disease and serum adalimumab concentrations: A multi-center cross-sectional study

Laura Sirmai, Anne-Laure Pelletier, Nathalie Gault, Camille Zallot, Guillaume Bouguen, Dominique Bouchard, Pascale Roland Nicaise, Marine Peyneau, Sandrine Sironneau, Marcelo De Carvalho Bittencourt, Antoine Petitcollin, Pedro Fernandez, Xavier Roblin, Laurent Siproudhis, Laurent Abramowitz

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and Hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Drobne D, Liakina V

Received: February 11, 2021
Peer-review started: February 11, 2021
First decision: March 28, 2021
Revised: April 25, 2021
Accepted: January 29, 2022
Article in press: January 29, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Laura Sirmai, Anne-Laure Pelletier, Division of Hepato-Gastroenterology and Digestive Oncology, Bichat Claude Bernard University Hospital, Paris 75018, France

Laura Sirmai, Division of Hepato-Gastroenterology, Hospital Croix Saint Simon, Paris 75020, France

Nathalie Gault, Division of Epidemiology, Biostatistics and Clinical Research, University Hospital Center Bichat, Paris 75018, France

Nathalie Gault, National Institute of Health and Medical Research CIC-EC1425, University Hospital Center Bichat, Paris 75018, France

Camille Zallot, Division of Gastroenterology, Nancy Regional and University Hospital Center, Nancy 54035, France

Guillaume Bouguen, Laurent Siproudhis, Imphy CIC 1414 Group and Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University Hospital of Rennes, Pontchaillou, Rennes 35033, France

Dominique Bouchard, Division of Proctology, Hospital Bagatelle, Talence 33400, France

Pascale Roland Nicaise, Marine Peyneau, Division of Immunology, University Hospital Center Bichat, Paris 75018, France

Marine Peyneau, Inflammation, Microbiome and Immunosurveillance, Faculty of Pharmacy, Université Paris-Saclay, Châtenay-Malabry 92290, France

Sandrine Sironneau, Division of Radiology, Bagatelle Hospital Center, Talence 33400, France

Marcelo De Carvalho Bittencourt, Division of Immunology, Nancy Regional and University Hospital Center, Nancy 54000, France

Marcelo De Carvalho Bittencourt, University of Lorraine, CNRS UMR 7365, IMoPA, Nancy 54000, France

Antoine Petitcollin, Department of Clinical and Biological Pharmacology and Pharmacovigilance, Pharmacoepidemiology and Drug Information Center, Rennes University Hospital, Rennes 35700, France

Pedro Fernandez, Division of Radiology, University Hospital Center Bichat, Paris 75018, France

Pedro Fernandez, Orangerie Center, Le Perreux-sur-Marne 94170, France

Xavier Roblin, Division of Gastroenterology, CHU Saint Etienne, Saint-Priest-en-Jarez 42270, France

Laurent Abramowitz, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology and Proctology, University Hospital Center Bichat, Paris 75018, France

Laurent Abramowitz, Ramsay GDS Clinique Blomet, Paris 75018, France

Corresponding author: Laura Sirmai, MD, Doctor, Division of Hepato-Gastroenterology and Digestive Oncology, Bichat Claude Bernard University Hospital, 46 Rue Henri Huchard, Paris 75018, France. laura.sirmai@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Crohn's disease (CD) is complicated by perianal fistulas in approximately 20% of patients. Achieving permanent fistula closure remains a challenge for physicians. An association between serum anti-tumor necrosis factor-α concentrations and clinical outcomes in patients with CD has been demonstrated; however, little information is available on serum adalimumab (ADA) concentrations and remission of perianal fistulas in such patients.

AIM

To study the relationship between serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission of CD-associated perianal fistulas.

METHODS

This cross-sectional study of patients with CD-associated perianal fistulas treated with ADA was performed at four French hospitals between December 2013 and March 2018. At the time of each serum ADA concentration measurement, we collected information about the patients and their fistulas. The primary study endpoint was clinical remission of fistulas defined as the absence of drainage (in accordance with Present's criteria), with a PDAI ≤ 4, absence of a seton and assessment of the overall evaluation as favorable by the proctologist at the relevant center. We also assessed fistula healing [defined as being in clinical and radiological (magnetic resonance imaging, MRI) remission] and adverse events.

RESULTS

The study cohort comprised 34 patients who underwent 56 evaluations (patients had between one and four evaluations). Fifteen patients had clinical remissions (44%), four of whom had healed fistulas on MRI. Serum ADA concentrations were significantly higher at evaluations in which clinical remission was identified than at evaluations in which it was not [14 (10-16) *vs* 10 (2-15) μg/mL, $P = 0.01$]. Serum ADA concentrations were comparable at the times of evaluation of patients with and without healed fistulas [11 (7-14) *vs* 10 (4-16) μg/mL, $P = 0.69$]. The adverse event rate did not differ between different serum ADA concentrations.

CONCLUSION

We found a significant association between high serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission of CD-associated perianal fistulas.

Key Words: Crohn's disease; Clinical pharmacology; Peri-anal disorders; Adalimumab

Core Tip: Perianal fistulas (PAFs) are a complication of Crohn's disease (CD) in approximately 20% of patients. Adalimumab (ADA) was shown to treat CD-associated PAFs; however, little information is available on serum ADA concentrations and their remission. We performed a cross-sectional study at four hospitals in France to investigate this relationship, including 34 patients with 56 evaluations. Fifteen patients had clinical remission (44%). Serum ADA concentrations were significantly higher in evaluations showing clinical remission compared to those without. Thus, ADA serum concentrations that are required for PAF remission should be higher compared with the previously described concentrations associated with luminal remission.

Citation: Sirmai L, Pelletier AL, Gault N, Zallot C, Bouguen G, Bouchard D, Roland Nicaise P, Peyneau M, Sironneau S, Bittencourt MDC, Petitcollin A, Fernandez P, Roblin X, Siproudhis L, Abramowitz L. Relationship between clinical remission of perianal fistulas in Crohn's disease and serum adalimumab concentrations: A multi-center cross-sectional study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 961-972
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/961.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.961

INTRODUCTION

Crohn's disease (CD) is complicated by perianal fistulas (PAFs) in approximately 20% of patients and these PAFs can severely and negatively affect patients' quality of life[1]. Treatment of CD-associated PAFs was revolutionized by the advent of anti-tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α antibodies[2]. A meta-analysis of treatment with adalimumab (ADA), a TNF-α blocker, found that complete PAF closure occurred in 36% of patients with CD-associated fistulas (95%CI: 0.31-0.41) and partial responses in 31% (95%CI: 0.031-0.61)[3]. Its efficacy is better in anti-TNF-α-naive patients but it can also be effective after infliximab failure[4]. Adding surgical drainage with a seton has been shown to be superior to anti-TNF-α alone, with better responses and fewer recurrences[5,6]. Resolution of complex PAFs takes longer and timing of seton withdrawal depends on the effectiveness of the medical treatment and findings on clinico-radiological evaluation[5]. However, achieving permanent fistula closure remains a challenge for physicians.

Optimization of anti-TNF-α therapy (increasing the drug dosage and/or shortening the intervals between injections) is advised in patients with confirmed active disease, good compliance, and subtherapeutic drug serum concentrations in the absence of anti-drug antibodies[7]. Adding an immunosuppressive drug (in combination therapy) should also be considered[8]. Thus, optimization of treatment on the basis of anti-TNF-α (including ADA) and antibody serum concentrations has been evaluated[9-11]. Retrospective trials have suggested that higher target serum infliximab concentrations are required to reach remission in patients with CD-associated PAF than in those with luminal disease only[12-16]. Two recent retrospective trials also suggested that higher target serum ADA concentrations are associated with remission in patients with CD-associated PAF[15,16]. However, in those studies the evaluation criteria were mostly clinical, the studies were not confined to assessment of ADA, and they were small single-center studies. Our primary objective was, therefore, to study the relationship between serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study cohort and setting

This cross-sectional study was conducted in four French centers between December 2013 and March 2018. Patients with at least one active CD-associated PAF at the time of ADA initiation, or who developed a PAF while being treated with ADA (thus requiring optimization of ADA), whose serum ADA concentrations were measured at least once during follow-up (induction or treatment maintenance) were considered eligible. The PAFs could be associated with upper, ileal, colonic, or rectal lesions. Patients who were eligible on the basis of the above criteria were included irrespective of the durations of their PAFs and ADA treatment, associated or previously received treatments, and surgical procedures performed, particularly the closure technique (glue, plug, or rectal advancement flap after removal of a seton). ADA treatment could have been optimized or not and an immunosuppressive drug may also be used in combination therapy. Pregnant or breastfeeding women and patients with a history of proctectomy or undrained abscesses were excluded.

Data collected and definitions

Data were collected between October 2017 and March 2018 using a standardized paper collection file.

The clinical data collected at each evaluation were as follows: remission of any fistula, perineal disease activity index (PDAI) score, presence of associated lesions in the rectum or anus, durations of PAFs and seton drainage, Harvey Bradshaw score, ADA dosage and duration of treatment, associated treatment, and adverse events. Patient characteristics collected and assessed were as follows: treatment center; age; sex; body mass index; co-morbidities; smoking status; Montreal classification; and medical and surgical history (abdominal surgery, number of fistula(e); simple, complex, or vaginal involvement; and surgical treatments for the PAF, including the type of closure performed). Pelvic magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and colonoscopy findings obtained within 3 mo of clinical evaluation and in the absence of more recent changes in treatment were collected if performed, which was at the discretion of the physician. MRI images were reassessed by a single expert radiologist (Fernandez P). ADA and anti-ADA antibody serum concentrations were measured in the laboratories of each investigating center using a standardized drug-sensitive ELISA test (Lisa Tracker; Theradiag, France) or equivalent immunologic test[17]. If more than one serum ADA concentration was available, the trough concentration (Day 13 or 14 after ADA injection) was used, as recommended in a recent published study[18]. Serum ADA concentrations were measured systematically or at the times of clinical evaluations in accordance with the standard procedures at the participating centers. Some serum ADA concentrations were reported as greater than 16 μg/mL; therefore, all measures were recorded to a maximum of 16 μg/mL.

The primary study endpoint was clinical remission of PAF, defined as the absence of drainage (both spontaneous and after soft pressure on the orifice by the clinician, in accordance with Present's criteria [2]), with a PDAI ≤ 4, absence of a seton and assessment of the overall evaluation as favorable by the proctologist at the relevant center. This outcome was defined after agreement by experts from the Proctology Research Group of the French National Society of Colo-Proctology, the investigators being members of these groups. If one of the above criteria were absent, the PAF was described as active. Favorable evaluation by the proctologist was defined as no inflammation of external(s) and internal(s) orifice(s) and absence of current or new associated anal lesions (stenosis, ulceration, or fistulous branching) that had developed after introduction of ADA or the most recent change in modality of medical or surgical treatment. In patients with multiple CD-associated PAFs, all lesions had to have resolved to conclude the evaluation was favorable. The clinical remission criteria were reviewed at all evaluations.

The secondary study endpoint was healing, which was defined as clinical remission (as described above) plus radiological healing on pelvic MRI, this definition having been reached by agreement of the Proctology Research Group's experts and as reported by other research groups[19,20]. The full criteria were absence of hypersignal T2 or enhancement after gadolinium T1 injection, absence of any abscess, and absence of rectal inflammation.

ADA optimization was defined as shortening of the interval between injections to 7 d or increasing the dosage of injections to 80 mg (or both).

Combination therapy was defined as addition of an immunosuppressive drug (thiopurine or methotrexate) to ADA.

Endoscopic luminal remission was defined by a score of less than 6 on the CD Endoscopic Index of Severity.

Clinical luminal remission was defined by a Harvey Bradshaw score of less than 4.

ADA tolerance was assessed on the basis of occurrence of adverse events.

The following definitions apply to terms used in the remainder of this article. Immunization was defined as undetectable serum ADA concentrations and the presence of anti-ADA antibodies in concentrations above 20 ng/mL[21].

Complex PAFs were defined as PAF branched in two or more directions or presence of ramifications or diverticula[5,22].

PDAI scores are based on the presence of fistula drainage, pain, and its effects on activity, limitations on sexual activity, degree of induration, and type of fistula. A score greater than 4 indicates definite active disease.

Statistical analysis

First, patients' characteristics are reported according to occurrence of clinical remission. Quantitative variables are presented as median and interquartile range and categorical variables as frequencies and percentages. The overall number and proportion of patients achieving clinical remission, achieving healing, and having at least one adverse event were determined.

The distribution of durations of PAFs and drainage, ongoing treatment, and serum albumin and C-reactive protein concentrations was further explored according to the clinical remission status at the time of evaluation.

The relationship between serum ADA concentrations and each of the following was assessed: clinical remission, healing, endoscopic luminal remission, clinical luminal remission, treatment optimization, and treatment with combination therapy. These relationships were studied using univariate generalized estimating equations models, considering an evaluation as the statistical unit (some patients having undergone several evaluations).

Association between serum ADA concentrations at each visit and clinical remission was also adjust on the duration of treatment.

All analyses were performed using R version 3.2.0. All tests were two-tailed, and the level of statistical significance was set at $P = 0.05$.

RESULTS

Patient characteristics

Of the 45 patients who were screened for inclusion, 34 were found to be eligible (9 from Paris, 8 from Rennes, 13 from Nancy, and 4 from Saint-Etienne), 16 of whom were women (47%). The remaining 11 patients were excluded for the following reasons: three for wrong diagnoses (two anal stenosis, one ulcerative colitis), three because they had undergone proctectomy, one was a minor, one had an undrained abscess, and three had PAFs that had resolved. Patients had between one and four evaluations (total of 56 evaluations), 50% of them having only one evaluation. Three of the 56 evaluations were performed during induction of ADA treatment.

Overall, 44% of the patients ($n = 15$) achieved clinical remission. Pelvic MRI was available for 23 of the 34 patients (56%) and showed that 17% ($n = 4$) had radiological evidence of healing. Of the patients in clinical remission, 44% had radiological evidence of healing.

Table 1 summarizes the characteristics of the participants that were collected at the first evaluation. Most of these characteristics were comparable between patients who achieved and did not achieve clinical remission (Table 1), particularly smoking status (43% *vs* 47%) and previous treatment with biotherapies including infliximab (47% *vs* 53%). More patients' treatment was optimized at the first evaluation in patients who achieved clinical remission than in those who did not (60% *vs* 42%). Patients who achieved clinical remission tended to have fewer complex PAFs (73% *vs* 89%) and vaginal PAFs (7% *vs* 21%) and they had colonic lesions less frequently (33% *vs* 42%) Patients who achieved clinical remission tended to have undergone more fistula closure procedures than those who did not achieve remission (33% *vs* 16%).

None of the six patients who achieved remission and underwent more than one evaluation relapsed. These evaluations took place between 3 mo and 4 years after the first evaluation. All patients in clinical remission from PAF were in luminal remission (established by clinical and endoscopic evaluation), whereas half of the patients who did not achieve clinical remission from PAFs had luminal activity. Of the 19 patients with active disease, three had immunization status regarding ADA, five had undrained branches detected by MRI indicating insufficient surgical treatment, and six had low serum ADA concentrations (< 4 μg/mL) that could probably have benefited from optimization. The remaining five patients may have truly failed ADA treatment after 6 mo of well-conducted treatment.

Adverse events

Five patients (14.7%) had at least one adverse event leading to ADA discontinuation. Two of them were in the clinical remission group (pancytopenia and joint pain of no definite cause) and the remaining three in the activity group (axonal neuropathy attributed to ADA and digestive, pulmonary, and ganglionic tuberculosis; vertigo; and joint pain).

Serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission

Median serum ADA concentrations were significantly higher in assessment visits of patients in clinical remission than in those not in clinical remission [14 (10-16) *vs* 10 (2-15) μg/mL, $P = 0.02$ after adjustment on the duration of treatment] (Figures 1 and 2), with an area under the ROC curve of 65.6%. Clinical remission was not identified in the three evaluations of patients with immunization status regarding ADA.

The duration of treatment with ADA tended to be longer in the clinical remission than in the non-clinical remission group (37 *vs* 12 mo). The median duration of drainage with a seton was 8 mo in the clinical remission group compared with 9 mo in the non-clinical remission group (Table 2). The median duration of PAFs tended to be longer in the clinical remission than no clinical remission group (53 mo *vs* 12 mo) (Table 2).

Serum ADA concentrations and healing

Median serum ADA concentrations did not differ significantly between evaluations in which healing (clinical and MRI remission) was identified and those in which it was not [11 (7-14) *vs* 10 (4-16) μg/mL, $P = 0.69$].

Serum ADA concentrations and optimization or combination therapy

Serum ADA concentrations tended to be higher in patients whose treatment was optimized than in those whose treatment was not optimized [14 (5-16) μg/mL *vs* 10 (4-13) μg/mL, $P = 0.20$] and in patients receiving combination therapy than in those receiving ADA alone [12 (5-16) μg/mL *vs* 11 (5-14) μg/mL,

Table 1 Patients' characteristics according to clinical remission status

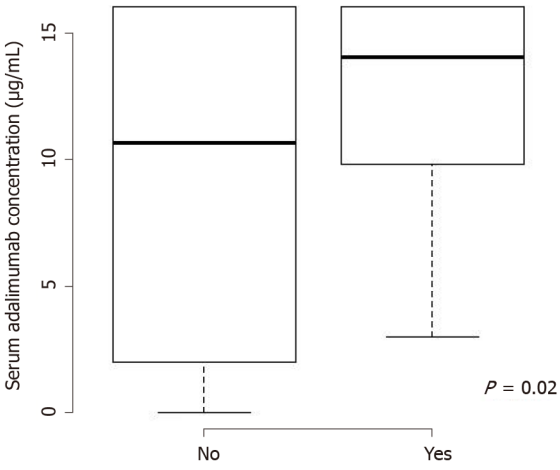
	Clinical remission, *n* (%) unless otherwise specified	
	No, *n* = 19	Yes, *n* = 15
Female sex	10 (53%)	6 (40%)
Age (yrs), Med [IQR]	34 [27-38]	35 [23-44]
BMI, Med [IQR]	28 [19-32]	22 [20-23]
Number of comorbidities[1], Med [IQR]	0 [0-1]	0 [0-1]
Active smoking, 1 MD	9 (47%)	6 (43%)
Crohn's disease phenotype (Montreal L)		
Terminal ileum	3 (16%)	4 (27%)
Colon	8 (42%)	5 (33%)
Ileo-colon	8 (42%)	5 (33%)
Upper digestive tract	0 (0%)	1 (7%)
Crohn's disease phenotype (Montreal B)		
Non-stricturing, non-penetrating	12 (63%)	8 (53%)
Stricturing	4 (21%)	2 (13%)
Penetrating	2 (11%)	2 (13%)
Stricturing + penetrating	1 (5%)	3 (20%)
Number of fistulas, Med [IQR]	2 [1-2]	2 [1-2]
Complex fistula	17 (89%)	11 (73%)
Vaginal fistula	4 (21%)	1 (7%)
Previous treatment with infliximab	10 (53%)	7 (47%)
Previous treatment with another anti-TNF-α[2]	10 (53%)	7 (47%)
Previous treatment with another form of biotherapy[3]	10 (53%)	7 (47%)
Previous treatment with combination therapy	12 (63%)	5 (33%)
Previous abdominal surgery		
No	14 (74%)	11 (73%)
Appendicectomy	0 (0%)	2 (13%)
Ileocecal resection	4 (21%)	2 (13%)
Colectomy	1 (6%)	0 (0%)
Previous fistulotomy	4 (21%)	6 (40%)
Previous seton	18 (95%)	13 (87%)
Previous flattening of abscesses	8 (42%)	10 (67%)
Previous closure techniques	3 (16%)	5 (33%)
Previous glue	2 (11%)	4 (27%)
Previous plug	0 (0%)	1 (7%)
Previous rectal advancement flap	1 (5%)	0 (0%)
Optimization at first visit	8 (42%)	9 (60%)
Combination therapy (with methotrexate or thiopurine) at first visit	12 (63%)	5 (33%)
Combination therapy and/or optimization at first evaluation	15 (79%)	9 (60%)

[1]Cardiological disorders, Anxiety-depressive disorders, Acute pancreatitis, Asthma, Joint involvement, Hypothyroidism.
[2]Infliximab, certolizumab, golimumab.
[3]Infliximab, certolizumab, golimumab, vedolizumab, ustekinumab. BMI: Body mass index; IQR: Interquartile range; Med: Median; MD: Missing data.

Table 2 Characteristics of perianal fistulas at each visit according to the presence of clinical remission

	Clinical remission, *n* (%) unless otherwise specified	
	No, *n* = 34	Yes, *n* = 22
PAF duration (Time from fistula diagnosis to date of visit) in mo, Med [IQR]	12 [8-23.5]	53.5 [32.75-81.75]
Drainage duration (Time from seton setting down to date of visit) in mo, Med [IQR]	9 [4.75-17]	8 [4-19]
Combination therapy (with methotrexate or thiopurine)	23 (68%)	7 (32%)
Optimization	19 (56%)	14 (64%)
Serum concentrations of ADA (μg/mL), Med [IQR]	10.7 [2.4-14.7]	14.1 [9.8-16]
C reactive protein (mg/L), Med [IQR]	2.7 [0.07-15.25]	0.9 [0-1.8]
Serum albumin (g/L), Med [IQR]	42 [38.25-47.3]	43 [41.85-44.25]
Length of treatment by ADA in mo, Med [IQR]	12 [6-34.75]	37.5 [23.75-46.75]

PAF: Perianal fistulas; Med: Median; ADA: Adalimumab.



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.961

Figure 1 Serum adalimumab concentrations according to clinical remission status.

P = 0.11]. Neither of these differences was statistically significant.

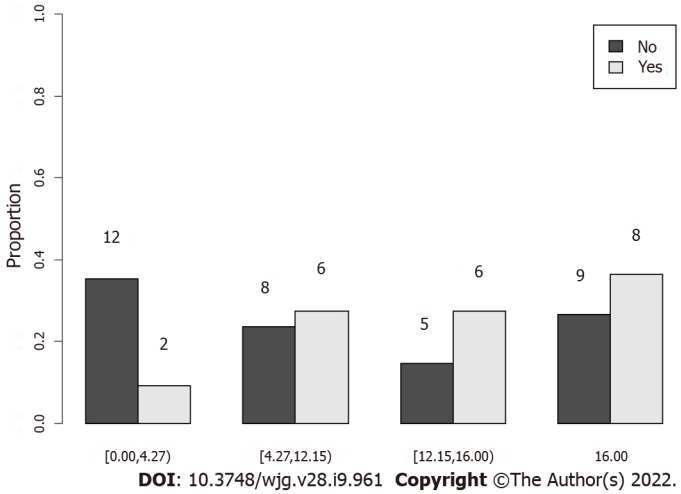
Serum ADA concentrations and luminal remission

Median serum ADA concentrations tended to be higher in patients with endoscopic luminal remission and in those with clinical luminal remission than in those without it [12 (6-16) μg/mL *vs* 2 (1-4) μg/mL, and 14 (10-16) μg/mL *vs* 4.2 (1-11) μg/mL, respectively].

DISCUSSION

In this study, we found higher median serum ADA concentrations in patients who were in clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs than in those with active disease, the higher concentration not being associated with a higher incidence of adverse events. To the best of our knowledge, this is the first multicenter study dedicated to investigating the relationship between serum ADA concentrations and remission of CD-associated PAFs. Our definition of healing of PAFs included clinical and MRI criteria, as recently recommended[5,20,22,25].

Our findings suggest that remission of CD-associated PAFs requires higher serum concentrations of ADA than those previously reported for resolution of luminal disease (between 4.5 and 12 μg/mL based on results of clinical trials)[9,10]. The high serum concentrations that we found to be associated with clinical remission seem to be more frequently achieved through optimization of ADA dosage or combination therapy (or both).



DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.961

Figure 2 Clinical remission according to quartiles of serum adalimumab concentrations.

Serum ADA concentrations have shown considerable variability and overlap between patients with and without clinical remission, as previously described[9]. It is likely that not all patients need to reach these high concentrations. For patients not achieving remission, we suggest measuring serum ADA concentrations and antibodies to exclude immunogenicity issue. Optimizing ADA dosage or adding combination therapy (or both) should be considered, even if we do not have yet a concentration to target.

In our study, patients with active lesions had more complex PAFs (89% *vs* 73%) and more vaginal fistulas, indicating the severity of the disease. No patients who achieved remission of PAFs had colorectal activity, highlighting the importance of achieving luminal remission when managing PAFs.

Four of the 23 patients (56% of the whole cohort) who had an MRI in our study achieved healing (17%).

Our low rate of healing of PAFs (clinical plus MRI remission) is likely attributable to our high rate of complex PAFs, the well-known delay between MRI remission compared with clinical remission (approximately 12 mo)[23], given that some follow up data were missing, and the fact that 44% of our patients did not undergo MRI evaluation.

We found no significant difference in serum ADA concentrations according to healing status [11 (7-14) μg/mL *vs* 10 (4-16) μg/mL, $P = 0.69$]. We think the lack of statistical significance is attributable to our small sample size, and our low rate of healing of PAFs, likely due to the accuracy of this robust criteria.

We found that the PAF duration was longer in patients with PAF activity than in those in remission (53.5 *vs* 12 mo), which likely reflects failure of medical or surgical (or both) treatment.

The three patients with anti-ADA antibodies and undetectable serum ADA had clinically active disease, which is consistent with the findings of a previous study that showed that the presence of anti-TNF-α antibodies is a risk factor for disease activity and recurrence[24].

Recently, two retrospective trials[15,16] were performed to assess the relationships between concentrations of anti-TNF medications, including ADA, and outcomes of CD-associated PAFs. Their results are consistent with ours: Strik *et al*[15] (19 patients treated with ADA) found significantly higher median serum ADA concentrations in patients with closed PAFs than in those with active PAFs [7 (6-11) μg/mL *vs* 5 (2-6) μg/mL, $P = 0.003$]. Additionally, Plevris *et al*[16] (35 patients treated with ADA) found significantly higher median ADA concentrations in individuals with healed fistulas than in those with unhealed fistulas (12.6 μg/mL vs. 2.7 μg/mL; $P < 0.01$).

Of note, our patients' serum ADA concentrations were much higher than in these two studies. Possible explanations for this discrepancy are that more of our patients were receiving combination therapy or optimization of ADA treatment (or both) and we had a high rate of complex PAFs (82%), including 15% with vaginal involvement. One strength of our study is the very precise description of our study cohort and their PAFs (PAF complexity, the presence or absence of setons, and endoscopic data). We chose a stricter clinical definition of remission, incorporating PDAI scores, and a greater proportion of our patients underwent radiological evaluation (no MRIs in Plevris *et al* study and 15% in the Strik *et al* study *vs* 56% in our study), which has been shown to be very important in assessing healing of PAFs[25].

In our study, high serum ADA concentrations was not associated with an increased incidence of adverse events, knowing that we only took into account the serious adverse events leading to a stop of ADA. In the literature, Drobne *et al*[26] and Greener *et al*[27] studies found that higher infliximab serum concentrations are not associated with a higher frequency of infections. Interestingly, Landemaine *et al* [28] study found that infection risk was individually correlated with cumulative increase in drug

exposure, but not infliximab trough level.

Our study had several important limitations. Being a cross-sectional, non-interventional, non-randomized study, management of patients was heterogeneous both in terms of surgical and medical treatment. Additionally, most data were collected retrospectively. However, it was an evaluation of management of CD-associated PAFs in real life in tertiary centers. We had a small sample size, as did the other two available studies, because of the competition of other biotherapies. Trough serum ADA concentrations were not always measured; thus, it is possible that ADA concentrations fluctuated between injections[18]. Timing of measurement of serum ADA concentrations was either systematic or clinically oriented, depending on the center, favoring non-responders or partial responders. With an area under the ROC curve that was close to 50%, we could not identify target serum ADA concentrations associated with clinical remission using the Youden index. Additionally, half of the patients had only one evaluation, limiting the availability of follow-up data.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, there is an association between clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs and high serum ADA concentrations that is not associated with an increased incidence of adverse events. Our data suggest that higher ADA concentrations are associated with remission of CD-associated PAFs than in mucosal healing. Target serum ADA concentrations to guide physicians should be determined by a prospective trial.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Perianal fistulas (PAFs) are a complication of Crohn's disease (CD) in approximately 20% of patients. Adalimumab (ADA) was shown to treat CD-associated PAFs. An association between serum anti-tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α concentrations and clinical outcomes in patients with CD has been demonstrated; however, little information is available on serum ADA concentrations and PAFs remission.

Research motivation

Achieving permanent PAFs closure remains a challenge for physicians, especially for complex PAFs. Retrospective trials have suggested that higher target serum infliximab concentrations are required to reach remission in patients with CD-associated PAFs than in those with luminal disease only. Two recent retrospective trials also suggested that higher target serum ADA concentrations are associated with remission in patients with CD-associated PAFs. We lacked a study dedicated to the investigation of this relationship.

Research objectives

To study the relationship between serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs.

Research methods

We performed a multicenter cross-sectional study in France to assessed the relationship between serum ADA concentrations and clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs. We used a strict criteria to define clinical remission: absence of drainage (in accordance with Present's criteria), with a PDAI ≤ 4, absence of a seton and assessment of the overall evaluation as favorable by the proctologist at the relevant center. We also assessed healing defined by clinical and radiological (MRI) remission as a secondary endpoint.

Research results

We found higher median serum ADA concentrations in patients who were in clinical remission of CD-associated PAFs than in those with active disease, the higher concentration not being associated with a higher incidence of adverse events. We found no significant difference in serum ADA concentrations according to healing status, likely due to the accuracy of this robust criteria.

Research conclusions

Our findings suggest that remission of CD-associated PAFs requires higher serum concentrations of ADA than those previously reported for resolution of luminal disease.

Research perspectives

Target serum ADA concentrations to guide physicians should be determined by a prospective trial.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank Jodi Smith, PhD, and Dr Trish Reynolds, MBBS, FRACP for editing a draft of this manuscript. We thank Toni Alfaiate for statistical advices.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Sirmai L is the Guarantor of the article; Sirmai L conceived the study together with Pelletier AL and Abramowitz L; Fernandez P read the MRI images; Sirmai L, Pelletier AL, Zallot C, Bouguen G, Bouchard D, Roland Nicaise P, Peyneau M, Sironneau S, De Carvalho Bittencourt M, Petitcollin A, Roblin X, Siproudhis L, and Abramowitz L collected data; Gault N performed statistical analyses; all authors commented the article and approved the final version of the article, including the authorship list.

Supported by the Assistance Publique des Hôpitaux de Paris and AbbVie (North Chicago, Illinois, United States).

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the CNIL (N° CERFA 13810*01).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Sirmai L reports having received grant support from Abbvie and congress invitations from Roche and Sandoz and having received conference or consultancy fees from Gilead, MSD, Abbvie, Mayoly Spindler, Takeda, Ipsen, Allergan France and Ferring; Pelletier AL reports having received grant support from Abbvie and financial support from Ferring; Zallot C reports having received financial support from Takeda, Abbvie, Ferring, Janssen and Pfizer; Bouguen G reports having received lecture fees from Abbvie, Ferring, MSD, Takeda and Pfizer and consultant fees from Takeda, Janssen, Mylan and Abbvie; Bouchard D reports having received speaking fees from Abbvie, MSD and Janssen, consultancy fees from Takeda, and congress invitations from Abbvie, Pfizer and Takeda; Gault N, Roland Nicaise P, Peyneau M, Sironneau S, Bittencourt M, Petitcollin A, Fernandez P all declare they have no conflicts of interest; Roblin X reports having received financial support from Abbvie, Amgen, Pfizer, Takeda, Janssen, MSD and Theradiag; Siproudhis L reports having received conference or consultancy fees from Gilead, MSD, Abbvie, Mayoly Spindler, Takeda, Ipsen, Allergan France and Ferring; Abramowitz L reports having received grant support from Abbvie and financial support from Takeda.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement-checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement-checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: France

ORCID number: Laura Sirmai 0000-0002-8627-8155; Anne-Laure Pelletier 0000-0003-4055-7615; Nathalie Gault 0000-0002-9913-9760; Camille Zallot 0000-0003-0993-6983; Guillaume Bouguen 0000-0002-7444-5905; Dominique Bouchard 0000-0003-0984-8545; Pascale Roland Nicaise 0000-0001-7137-135X; Marine Peyneau 0000-0002-5554-0835; Sandrine Sironneau 0000-0002-5656-7917; Marcelo De Carvalho Bittencourt 0000-0002-2698-2458; Antoine Petitcollin 0000-0003-4811-0439; Pedro Fernandez 0000-0001-8410-1623; Xavier Roblin 0000-0002-7929-4878; Laurent Siproudhis 0000-0002-2575-6790; Laurent Abramowitz 0000-0002-5106-4317.

S-Editor: Chang KL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chang KL

REFERENCES

1 **Schwartz DA**, Loftus EV Jr, Tremaine WJ, Panaccione R, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR, Sandborn WJ. The natural history of fistulizing Crohn's disease in Olmsted County, Minnesota. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 875-880 [PMID: 11910338 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.32362]

2 **Present DH**, Rutgeerts P, Targan S, Hanauer SB, Mayer L, van Hogezand RA, Podolsky DK, Sands BE, Braakman T, DeWoody KL, Schaible TF, van Deventer SJ. Infliximab for the treatment of fistulas in patients with Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **340**: 1398-1405 [PMID: 10228190 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199905063401804]

3 **Fu YM**, Chen M, Liao AJ. A Meta-Analysis of Adalimumab for Fistula in Crohn's Disease. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2017; **2017**: 1745692 [PMID: 29204155 DOI: 10.1155/2017/1745692]

4 **Lichtiger S**, Binion DG, Wolf DC, Present DH, Bensimon AG, Wu E, Yu AP, Cardoso AT, Chao J, Mulani PM, Lomax KG, Kent JD. The CHOICE trial: adalimumab demonstrates safety, fistula healing, improved quality of life and increased work productivity in patients with Crohn's disease who failed prior infliximab therapy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **32**: 1228-1239 [PMID: 20955442 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04466.x]

5 **Bouchard D**, Abramowitz L, Bouguen G, Brochard C, Dabadie A, de Parades V, Eléouet-Kaplan M, Fathallah N, Faucheron JL, Maggiori L, Panis Y, Pigot F, Rouméguère P, Sénéjoux A, Siproudhis L, Staumont G, Suduca JM, Vinson-Bonnet B, Zeitoun JD. Anoperineal lesions in Crohn's disease: French recommendations for clinical practice. *Tech Coloproctol* 2017; **21**: 683-691 [PMID: 28929282 DOI: 10.1007/s10151-017-1684-y]

6 **Hyder SA**, Travis SP, Jewell DP, McC Mortensen NJ, George BD. Fistulating anal Crohn's disease: results of combined surgical and infliximab treatment. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2006; **49**: 1837-1841 [PMID: 17041753 DOI: 10.1007/s10350-006-0656-5]

7 **Yanai H**, Lichtenstein L, Assa A, Mazor Y, Weiss B, Levine A, Ron Y, Kopylov U, Bujanover Y, Rosenbach Y, Ungar B, Eliakim R, Chowers Y, Shamir R, Fraser G, Dotan I, Ben-Horin S. Levels of drug and antidrug antibodies are associated with outcome of interventions after loss of response to infliximab or adalimumab. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 522-530.e2 [PMID: 25066837 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2014.07.029]

8 **Colombel JF**, Sandborn WJ, Reinisch W, Mantzaris GJ, Kornbluth A, Rachmilewitz D, Lichtiger S, D'Haens G, Diamond RH, Broussard DL, Tang KL, van der Woude CJ, Rutgeerts P; SONIC Study Group. Infliximab, azathioprine, or combination therapy for Crohn's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1383-1395 [PMID: 20393175 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0904492]

9 **Roblin X**, Marotte H, Rinaudo M, Del Tedesco E, Moreau A, Phelip JM, Genin C, Peyrin-Biroulet L, Paul S. Association between pharmacokinetics of adalimumab and mucosal healing in patients with inflammatory bowel diseases. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 80-84.e2 [PMID: 23891927 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.07.010]

10 **Yarur AJ**, Jain A, Hauenstein SI, Quintero MA, Barkin JS, Deshpande AR, Sussman DA, Singh S, Abreu MT. Higher Adalimumab Levels Are Associated with Histologic and Endoscopic Remission in Patients with Crohn's Disease and Ulcerative Colitis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2016; **22**: 409-415 [PMID: 26752470 DOI: 10.1097/MIB.0000000000000689]

11 **Kennedy NA**, Heap GA, Green HD, Hamilton B, Bewshea C, Walker GJ, Thomas A, Nice R, Perry MH, Bouri S, Chanchlani N, Heerasing NM, Hendy P, Lin S, Gaya DR, Cummings JRF, Selinger CP, Lees CW, Hart AL, Parkes M, Sebastian S, Mansfield JC, Irving PM, Lindsay J, Russell RK, McDonald TJ, McGovern D, Goodhand JR, Ahmad T; UK Inflammatory Bowel Disease Pharmacogenetics Study Group. Predictors of anti-TNF treatment failure in anti-TNF-naive patients with active luminal Crohn's disease: a prospective, multicentre, cohort study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **4**: 341-353 [PMID: 30824404 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-1253(19)30012-3]

12 **El-Matary W**, Walters TD, Huynh HQ, deBruyn J, Mack DR, Jacobson K, Sherlock ME, Church P, Wine E, Carroll MW, Benchimol EI, Lawrence S, Griffiths AM. Higher Postinduction Infliximab Serum Trough Levels Are Associated With Healing of Fistulizing Perianal Crohn's Disease in Children. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2019; **25**: 150-155 [PMID: 29912413 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izy217]

13 **Yarur AJ**, Kanagala V, Stein DJ, Czul F, Quintero MA, Agrawal D, Patel A, Best K, Fox C, Idstein K, Abreu MT. Higher infliximab trough levels are associated with perianal fistula healing in patients with Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 933-940 [PMID: 28211593 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13970]

14 **Davidov Y**, Ungar B, Bar-Yoseph H, Carter D, Haj-Natour O, Yavzori M, Chowers Y, Eliakim R, Ben-Horin S, Kopylov U. Association of Induction Infliximab Levels With Clinical Response in Perianal Crohn's Disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2017; **11**: 549-555 [PMID: 28453755 DOI: 10.1093/ecco-jcc/jjw182]

15 **Strik AS**, Löwenberg M, Buskens CJ, B Gecse K, I Ponsioen C, Bemelman WA, D'Haens GR. Higher anti-TNF serum levels are associated with perianal fistula closure in Crohn's disease patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2019; **54**: 453-458 [PMID: 31032686 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2019.1600014]

16 **Plevris N**, Jenkinson PW, Arnott ID, Jones GR, Lees CW. Higher anti-tumor necrosis factor levels are associated with perianal fistula healing and fistula closure in Crohn's disease. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **32**: 32-37 [PMID: 31567638 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001561]

17 **Desvignes C**, Edupuganti SR, Darrouzain F, Duveau AC, Loercher A, Paintaud G, Mulleman D. Development and validation of an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay to measure adalimumab concentration. *Bioanalysis* 2015; **7**: 1253-1260 [PMID: 26045004 DOI: 10.4155/bio.15.30]

18 **Ward MG**, Thwaites PA, Beswick L, Hogg J, Rosella G, Van Langenberg D, Reynolds J, Gibson PR, Sparrow MP. Intra-patient variability in adalimumab drug levels within and between cycles in Crohn's disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2017; **45**: 1135-1145 [PMID: 28239869 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13992]

19 **Van Assche G**, Vanbeckevoort D, Bielen D, Coremans G, Aerden I, Noman M, D'Hoore A, Penninckx F, Marchal G, Cornillie F, Rutgeerts P. Magnetic resonance imaging of the effects of infliximab on perianal fistulizing Crohn's disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 332-339 [PMID: 12591051 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2003.07241.x]

20 **Thomassin L**, Armengol-Debeir L, Charpentier C, Bridoux V, Koning E, Savoye G, Savoye-Collet C. Magnetic resonance imaging may predict deep remission in patients with perianal fistulizing Crohn's disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 4285-4292 [PMID: 28694669 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i23.4285]

21 **Paul S**, Dronne W, Roblin X. Kinetics of Antibodies Against Adalimumab Are Not Associated With Poor Outcomes in IBD. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2015; **110**: 777-778 [PMID: 25942310 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2015.79]

22 **Gecse KB**, Bemelman W, Kamm MA, Stoker J, Khanna R, Ng SC, Panés J, van Assche G, Liu Z, Hart A, Levesque BG, D'Haens G; World Gastroenterology Organization, International Organisation for Inflammatory Bowel Diseases IOIBD, European Society of Coloproctology and Robarts Clinical Trials; World Gastroenterology Organization International

Organisation for Inflammatory Bowel Diseases IOIBD European Society of Coloproctology and Robarts Clinical Trials. A global consensus on the classification, diagnosis and multidisciplinary treatment of perianal fistulising Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 1381-1392 [PMID: 24951257 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-306709]

23 **Ng SC**, Plamondon S, Gupta A, Burling D, Swatton A, Vaizey CJ, Kamm MA. Prospective evaluation of anti-tumor necrosis factor therapy guided by magnetic resonance imaging for Crohn's perineal fistulas. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2973-2986 [PMID: 19755971 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.509]

24 **Baert F**, Kondragunta V, Lockton S, Vande Casteele N, Hauenstein S, Singh S, Karmiris K, Ferrante M, Gils A, Vermeire S. Antibodies to adalimumab are associated with future inflammation in Crohn's patients receiving maintenance adalimumab therapy: a post hoc analysis of the Karmiris trial. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 1126-1131 [PMID: 25862647 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-307882]

25 **Hindryckx P**, Jairath V, Zou G, Feagan BG, Sandborn WJ, Stoker J, Khanna R, Stitt L, van Viegen T, Shackelton LM, Taylor SA, Santillan C, Mearadji B, D'Haens G, Richard MP, Panes J, Rimola J. Development and Validation of a Magnetic Resonance Index for Assessing Fistulas in Patients With Crohn's Disease. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **157**: 1233-1244.e5 [PMID: 31336124 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.07.027]

26 **Drobne D**, Kurent T, Golob S, Svegl P, Rajar P, Terzic S, Kozelj M, Novak G, Smrekar N, Plut S, Sever N, Strnisa L, Hanzel J, Brecelj J, Urlep D, Osredkar J, Homan M, Orel R, Stabuc B, Ferkolj I, Smid A. Success and safety of high infliximab trough levels in inflammatory bowel disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2018; **53**: 940-946 [PMID: 29987967 DOI: 10.1080/00365521.2018.1486882]

27 **Greener T**, Kabakchiev B, Steinhart AH, Silverberg MS. Higher Infliximab Levels Are Not Associated With an Increase in Adverse Events in Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2018; **24**: 1808-1814 [PMID: 29697810 DOI: 10.1093/ibd/izy066]

28 **Landemaine A**, Petitcollin A, Brochard C, Miard C, Dewitte M, Le Balc'h E, Grainville T, Bellissant E, Siproudhis L, Bouguen G. Cumulative Exposure to Infliximab, But Not Trough Concentrations, Correlates With Rate of Infection. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **19**: 288-295.e4 [PMID: 32200087 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2020.03.018]

World Journal of Gastroenterology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastroenterol 2022 March 7; 28(9): 973-975

DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.973

ISSN 1007-9327 (print) ISSN 2219-2840 (online)

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

Radiomics-clinical nomogram for response to chemotherapy in synchronous liver metastasis of colorectal cancer: Good, but not good enough

Han Yan, Tu-Nan Yu

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and Hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Herold M, Mohamed SY

Received: October 31, 2021
Peer-review started: October 31, 2021
First decision: December 12, 2021
Revised: January 3, 2022
Accepted: January 29, 2022
Article in press: January 29, 2022
Published online: March 7, 2022

Han Yan, Department of Colorectal Surgery, Sir Run Run Shaw Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310016, Zhejiang Province, China

Tu-Nan Yu, Department of General Surgery, Sir Run Run Shaw Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, Hangzhou 310016, Zhejiang Province, China

Corresponding author: Tu-Nan Yu, MD, PhD, Doctor, Statistician, Surgeon, Department of General Surgery, Sir Run Run Shaw Hospital, School of Medicine, Zhejiang University, No. 3 Qingchun East Road, Hangzhou 310016, Zhejiang Province, China. 3314006@zju.edu.cn

Abstract

There remains a persistent unmet need to detect the disease nonresponse (nonDR) subgroup before adjuvant therapy in synchronous liver metastasis patients with colorectal cancer. Ma's radiomics-clinical nomogram shows potential for the early detection of nonDR subgroups, but it is not good enough owing to at least three limitaions, which we address in this letter to the editor. First, the study did not explore RAS/BRAF mutations, HER2 amplifications, *etc.* to complement the current nomogram. Second, the nomogram was not validated in left- and right-sided tumors separately. Third, the most critical factor for determining the success of adjuvant therapy should be resectability rather than tumor size shrinkage, which was used in the study.

Key Words: Synchronous liver metastasis; Colorectal cancer; Radiomics

Core Tip: There remains a persistent unmet need to detect the disease nonresponse subgroup before adjuvant therapy in synchronous liver metastasis patients with colorectal cancer. Ma's radiomics-clinical nomogram is currently not good enough, as the study did not explore the statuses of certain tumor genes, did not validate the nomogram in left- and right-sided tumors separately, and used tumor size shrinkage rather than resectability to judge the success of adjuvant therapy.

Citation: Yan H, Yu TN. Radiomics-clinical nomogram for response to chemotherapy in synchronous liver metastasis of colorectal cancer: Good, but not good enough. *World J Gastroenterol* 2022; 28(9): 973-975
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/full/v28/i9/973.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.3748/wjg.v28.i9.973

TO THE EDITOR

Ma *et al*[1] recently published a novel study investigating the effect of magnetic resonance imaging-radiomics in predicting chemotherapeutic response in synchronous liver metastasis (SLM) patients with colorectal cancer (CRC). They proposed a radiomics-clinical nomogram (including the radiomics score, CA19-9, and lymphatic staging) with an area under the curve of 0.809, suggesting high predictive accuracy.

We congratulate the authors for their creative work, as in decision-making for adjuvant therapy in CRC patients with unresectable SLM, there remains a persistent unmet need to detect the disease nonresponse (nonDR) subgroup. Early detection of nonDR patients, aided by the radiomics-clinical nomogram of Ma's study, could result in substantial changes in subsequent therapeutic plans. For instance, in nonDR cases, more aggressive regimens could be applied instead of the frequently used FOLFOX or CAPOX, such as administration of bevacizumab to inhibit vascular endothelial growth factor or pembrolizumab for immunotherapy. Local regional therapies, including radiofrequency ablation and transcatheter arterial chemoembolization, could also be considered to treat SLM.

However, despite the aforementioned merit, there are at least three limitations to be discussed concerning this nomogram. First, although the authors explored tumor biomarkers, including CEA and CA19-9, to complement radiomics, the statuses of some critical tumor genes (*e.g.*, RAS/BRAF mutations, HER2 amplification, and MSI/MMR status) were not examined, despite the relevant recommendation in the latest National Comprehensive Cancer Network guideline[2]. Second, it is noteworthy that the biological behaviors of CRC differed depending on the anatomical location[3]. For instance, right-sided CRC patients with SLM were unlikely to respond to cetuximab and panitumumab as first-line therapy. Therefore, the performance of Ma's nomogram should be validated in right- and left-sided CRC separately. Last but not least, the most critical limitation was that the success of adjuvant therapy in CRC patients with SLM should be resectability, rather than tumor size shrinkage used in this study.

In conclusion, in CRC patients with SLM, Ma's radiomics-clinical nomogram shows potential for clinical utilization. However, it is currently not good enough.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: All authors helped to prepare this manuscript; Yan H and Yu TN contributed to manuscript writing, drafting conception and design.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest, and there was no fund supporting this manuscript.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Han Yan 0000-0001-8189-6678; Tu-Nan Yu 0000-0003-0866-3178.

S-Editor: Gong ZM
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Gong ZM

REFERENCES

1 **Ma YQ**, Wen Y, Liang H, Zhong JG, Pang PP. Magnetic resonance imaging-radiomics evaluation of response to chemotherapy for synchronous liver metastasis of colorectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 6465-6475 [PMID: 34720535 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i38.6465]

2 **Yang SY**, Cho MS, Kim NK. Difference between right-sided and left-sided colorectal cancers: from embryology to molecular subtype. *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2018; **18**: 351-358 [PMID: 29458272 DOI: 10.1080/14737140.2018.1442217]
3 **National Comprehensive Cancer Network**. Colon Cancer (Version 3.2021). [Accessed October 18, 2021]. Available from: https://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/pdf/colon.pdf

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com